THE DISCOVERY AND CONQUEST OF TERRA FLORIDA;

BY DON FERDINANDO DE SOTO,

AND SIX HUNDRED SPANIARDS HIS FOLLOWERS.

WRITTEN BY A GENTLEMAN OF ELVAS, EMPLOYED IN ALL THE ACTION, AND TRANSLATED OUT OF PORTUGUESE,

BY RICHARD HAKLUYT.

REPRINTED FROM THE EDITION OF 1611.

EDITED,
WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION,
AND A TRANSLATION OF A NARRATIVE OF THE EXPEDITION BY LUIS HERNANDEZ DE BIEDMA, FACTOR TO THE SAME,

BY WILLIAM B. RYE,
OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

M.DCCCLII.
LONDON:
RICHARDS, 37, GT. QUEEN STREET.
THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.


Vice-Admiral Sir CHARLES MALCOLM, Knt.  
THE EARL OF ELLESMORE.
Rear-Admiral Sir FRANCIS BEAUFORT, K.C.B.
CHARLES T. BEKE, Esq., Phil. D., F.S.A.
CAPTAIN C. R. DRINKWATER BETHUNE, R.N., C.B.
The LORD ALFRED S. CHURCHILL.
WILLIAM DESBOROUGH COOLEY, Esq.
BOLTON CORNEY, Esq., M.R.S.L.
The Right Rev. LORD BISHOP OF ST. DAVID'S.
SIR HENRY ELLIS, K.H., F.R.S.
JOHN FORSTER, Esq.
R. W. GREY, Esq., M.P.
THOMAS HODGKIN, Esq., M.D.
JOHN HOLMES, Esq.
JOHN WINTER JONES, Esq.
P. LEVESQUE, Esq.
The Very Rev. the DEAN OF ST. PAUL'S.
THOMAS BUNDALL, Esq.
The Right Hon. the LORD ADVOCATE OF SCOTLAND.
The Hon. HENRY E. J. STANLEY.

R. H. MAJOR, Esq., F.R.G.S., Honorary Secretary.
INTRODUCTION.

The first account of Fernando de Soto's travels through the southern portion of North America, was written by one of the Portuguese adventurers who accompanied the expedition throughout, and returned to his native country. It was published at Evora, in 1557, under the following title: "Relação verdadeira dos Trabalhos q ho Gouernador do Fernâdo d' Souto & certos Fidalgos Portugueses passaram no d' scobrimento da Provincia da Frolida. Agora nouamête feita per hû Fidalgo Deluas". Copies of this work are extremely rare. The price of one, mentioned in Mr. Rich's "Catalogue of Books relating principally to America", is stated at £31. 10s. It is a small octavo, in black letter. There is a copy in the collection of the Right Honourable Thomas Grenville, recently bequeathed to the British Museum.

The translation by Hakluyt, here reprinted, of this narrative by the "Gentleman of Elvas", has been already brought under the notice of the Hakluyt Society by Mr. Winter Jones, in his Introduction to the "Divers Voyages touching the discoverie of America". The reader will there see, that Hakluyt's intention in making this translation, was evidently to encourage the young colony in Virginia, and to procure an increase of support for that under-
INTRODUCTION.

taking, at a period when its chances of prosperity were but precarious. The work first appeared in 1609, under the following title: *Virginia richly valued by the description of the maine land of Florida her next neighbour; out of the foure yeeres continuall travell and discoverie for above one thousand miles east and west, of Don Ferdinando de Soto, and sixe hundred able men in his companie.* Wherein are truly observed the riches and fertilitie of those parts abounding with things necessarie, pleasant, and profitable for the life of man; with the natures and dispositions of the inhabitants. Written by a Portugall gentleman of Elvas, employed in all the action, and translated out of Portuguese by Richard Hakluyt. *At London, printed by Felix Kyngston for Matthew Lownes, 1609; small 4to.*

1 Among the poems of Michael Drayton, the celebrated author of the Polyolbion, is an "Ode to the Virginian Voyage", which was most probably written at this period (1609), and in a warm tone of sympathy with Hakluyt's praiseworthy exertions. We quote from the collected edition of his poems published in 1619-20:

You brave heroique minds,  
Worthy your countries name,  
That honour still pursue,  
Goe, and subdue,  
Whilst loyt'ring hinds  
Lurk here at home with shame.

Britans, you stay too long,  
Quickly aboard bestow you,  
And with a merry gale,  
Swell your stretch'd sayle,  
With vows as strong  
As the winds that blow you.

Your course securely steere,  
West and by south forth keepe;  
Rocks, lee-shores, nor sholes,  
When Eolus scowles,  
You need not feare,  
So absolute the deepe.

And cheerefully at sea,  
Succeesse you still intice,  
To get the pearle and gold,  
And ours to hold  
*Virginia*,  
Earth's only Paradise,

Where nature hath in store  
Fowle, venison, and fish;  
And the fruitfull'st soyle,  
Without your toyle,  
Three harvests more,  
All greater then you wish.

And the ambitious vine,  
Crownes with his purple masse  
The cedar reaching hie  
To kisse the sky,  
The cypressse, pine,  
And usefull sasafras,
The losses and mismanagement of the Virginia colony during the following year, had produced so much discouragement, and Hakluyt, as one of the chief patentees under the charter granted by King James for establishing this first settlement of the English in North America, naturally felt so much interest in its success, that as a fresh temptation to adventurers, and to stimulate the exertions of the colonists themselves, he in the year 1611 altered the title of the "Virginia richly valued", to that which we have adopted for our title-page.

Our reason for giving preference to the later title, is not only that it is much more scarce, but that it precludes the chance of a mistake, into which the earlier title might lead an unprepared reader, of concluding that the work itself treated of Virginia, and not of Florida.

This little volume is extremely rare, not being included in either of the editions of Hakluyt's cele-

To whose, the Golden Age
Still natures lawes doth give;
No other cares that tend,
But them to defend
From winters age,
That long there doth not live.

When as the lushious smell
Of that delicious land,
Above the seas that flowes
The cleere wind throwes
Your hearts to swell,
Approaching the deare strand.

And in regions farre,
Such heroes bring yee forth
As those from whom we came;
And plant our name
Under that starre
Not knowne unto our north.

And as there plenty growes
Of lawrell every where,
Apollo's sacred tree,
You it may see,
A poets browes
To crowne, that may sing there.

Thy Voyages attend,
Industrious HACKLYT,
Whose reading shall inflame
Men to seekes fame,
And much commend
To after-times thy wit.
brated collection, though reprinted in the supplement to that of 1809.

In America, it has been reprinted by Mr. Peter Force, in the fourth volume of his collection, entitled, "Tracts and other Papers relating principally to the origin, settlement, and progress of the colonies in North America"; published at Washington in 1846, but without any notes; and in "Part ii" of the "Historical Collections of Louisiana" (Philadelphia, 1850), also without annotation, in which the spelling is modernized, and Hakluyt's preface, and his marginal notes, with the exception of three, omitted.

An abridgment of Hakluyt's translation is inserted in "Purchas his Pilgrimes", fol. 1625. Part iv, pp. 1528-1556.

Another English version,—but very inferior to that by Hakluyt, and erroneous as to numbers, distances, and names of places,—was published anonymously in 1686, in 8vo., under the title of "A Relation of the invasion and conquest of Florida by the Spaniards, under the command of Fernando de Soto, written in Portuguese by a gentleman of the town of Elvas. Now Englished. To which is subjoyned, Two Journeys of the present Emperour of China [Kang-He] into Tartary, in the years 1682 and 1683, with some discoveries made by the Spaniards in the Island of California, in the year 1683". This, however, was merely a translation from a French version, anonymous also, but by Citri de la Guette, which appeared in Paris the year before, in 12mo., entitled, "Histoire de la Conqueste de la Floride par
les Espagnols, sous Ferdinand de Soto, écrite en Portugais par un gentilhomme de la ville d’Elvas.”

The Preface to this second English translation says: “This Relation now published has the preference in Spain, not only for its rarity, but for the merit of its author also. As to its rarity, there was but one manuscript of it in Spain, which was taken out of the library of the Duke of Sessa to be printed, and but few copies of the impression in any other country besides. It hath the advantage to be an original, and to come from the first hand; whereas that of the Ynca Garcilasso de la Vega came abroad but since,¹ and, how pompous soever it may appear in language, has no greater authority than the bare report of a private trooper, and by consequent cannot be compared to this, since the trooper who served Fernando de Soto in that expedition, might, for want of good intelligence, have in many things been mistaken, as well as Garcilasso, for want of memory and application. The truth of this seems more than probable, seeing Garcilasso, in the beginning of his Florida, affirms confidently, that Soto went thither accompanied with thirteen hundred men; whereas our author says, and that upon better ground, that he had but six hundred; whereupon, it is to be observed, that a gentleman, as he was, hath

¹ Garcilasso de la Vega’s History of Florida was completed in 1591. It was first printed at Lisbon in 1605, under the title of “La Florida del Ynca. Historia del Adelantado Hernando de Soto, Governador y capitán general del reyno de la Florida, y de otros heroicos cavalleros Españoles e Indios.” We shall presently have occasion to offer some remarks on the relative merits of the Portuguese and Spanish works.
commonly more knowledge, and a greater respect for truth, than a private sohdier. The title of the relation informs us, that our author was a Portuguese gentleman of the town of Elvas, and that he accompanied Soto in all that expedition. He is certainly one of those who are named in the second chapter, though he cannot be particularly known, since he has been unwilling to name, or any other way distinguish himself from the rest. It is very probable that his birth and quality made him to be admitted into the most important councils and deliberations; and the particular account he gives us of them, is sufficient to confirm this opinion. It is not at all to be doubted then, but that his information was good; and they who take the pains to examine his book, will be convinced of it, by his way of writing. His stile is natural, plain, and without any ornaments, such as the stile of a discourse ought to be, which hath truth onely for its object. He never wanders from his subject into useless digressions, as Garcilasso de la Vega doth, who seems to have had no other scope but to relate the exploits of Gonsales Sylvester, whom, in a manner, he makes the heroe of his romance; and who, nevertheless, is not so much as named by our author.”

A Dutch translation is in Van der Aa’s voluminous collection of voyages and travels, “Naukeurige versameling der gedenk-waardigste Zee en Land Reysen na Oost en West-Indien”, published at Leyden in 1706, in 8vo., accompanied by a map, and beautiful (?) engravings—“schoone kopere Platen”.

INTRODUCTION.

The same map is inserted in the French translation of Garcilasso de la Vega’s “Florida”, by Pierre Richelet, published by Van der Aa, at Leyden, in 1731.

The Appendix to the present edition consists of a translation of another narrative of Soto’s expedition, written by Biedma, or Viedma, a Spaniard, who accompanied it in the capacity of factor. This translation we have made from Ternaux-Compans’ Recueil de Pièces sur la Floride, published at Paris in 1841, and forming part of his collection of “Voyages, relations et mémoires originaux pour servir à l’histoire de la découverte de l’Amérique”. An abridgment of this narrative is given in the Historical Collections of Louisiana, before quoted, as “A translation of a recently discovered Manuscript Journal”, and in the Preface to the volume, we are informed that this manuscript was discovered in Spain; the natural assumption from which would be, that the version in question had been made from the original Spanish document: we are, however, at a loss to account for the occasional introduction of French words, such as Facteur de sa Majesté, Pamfile, Saint Esprit, etc.¹

The question, as to whether England or Spain may claim the priority in the discovery of Florida, has given rise to many contradictory statements. By the English, the honour has been claimed for Sebastian

¹ It is only a few days since, and after the text had been printed off, that an opportunity was afforded us, through the obliging attention of Mr. Henry Stevens, of inspecting the volume of the Historical Collections above alluded to.
INTRODUCTION.

Cabot; and by the Spaniards, for Ponce de Leon. Upon this subject, the historian De Thou, in his "Historia sui temporis", lib. xlv, 12mo., 1609, has the following remark:—"Flordam, qui primus invenierit, inter scriptores ambigitur. Hispani ... gloriab Joanni Pontio Legionensi deferunt... verum quod et certius est, plerique affirmant, jam ante Sebastianum Gabotum ... primum in eam Indiarum provinciam venisse."

Mr. Biddle, in his "Memoirs of Sebastian Cabot", thus treats the matter:

"The question, how far Cabot, on quitting the north, proceeded along the coast of the continent, has been the subject of contradictory statements. By some, his progress is limited to a latitude corresponding with that of the Straits of Gibraltar, while others insist on carrying him to the extreme point of the Atlantic sea coast. We can hardly be at a loss to decide, when it is recollected that while there is no direct authority for the latter opinion,—and it is one which would readily be adopted, in mistake, from the vague use originally of the title Florida,—the former has the direct sanction of Peter Martyr, (Dec. iii, cap. vi), 'Tetenditque tantum ad meridiem, littore sese incurvante, ut Herculei freti latitudinis fere gradus equarit; ad occidentemque profectus tantum est ut Cubam insulam a lerva longitudine graduum pene parem habuerit.' 'He was thereby brought so far into the south, by reason of the lande bending so much southwarde, that it was there almost equall in latitude with the sea called Fretum Herculeum, having the north pole
INTRODUCTION.

elevate in manner in the same degree. He sayled likewise in this tract so farre towards the west, that hee hadde the island of Cuba on his left hande, in manner, in the same degree of longitude.” (Peter Martyr's Decades, translated by Lok, p. 125.)

Gomara, more definitely, but perhaps only determining by conjecture the circumstantial statement of Peter Martyr, names 38°. Hakluyt, in the dedication of his second volume to Sir Robert Cecil, boasts of the universal acknowledgment, even by foreigners, “that all that mighty tract of land, from sixty-seven degrees northward, to the latitude almost of Florida, was first discovered out of England, by the commandment of King Henry VII”; and again, in a marginal note of his third volume (p. 9), he states, that Cabot discovered “the northern parts of that land, and from thence as far almost as Florida.”

Peter Martyr informs us, that a failure of provisions at this point compelled an abandonment of the further pursuit of the coast, and a return to England.—(Biddle's Memoir of Seb. Cabot, pp. 79-80.)

It has, however, to be observed, that while it is difficult to decide how far Cabot may have sailed in his southward track along the eastern coasts of America, before he was compelled from want of provisions to direct his course towards England, it is equally difficult to decide how much of the southern portion

1 Peter Martyr, in the same page of his Decades, speaks of the great navigator in these terms:—“Cabot is my very friende, whom I use familiarly, and delight to have him sometimes keepe mee companie in my owne house.”
of North America at that time bore the name of Florida. We learn from Sanford's *History of the United States*, that "Florida then included an indefinite extent of territory north and west of the present Floridas"; and in Williams's *Territory of Florida*, it is said that "The name Florida was at one period applied to all that tract of country which extends from Canada to the Rio del Norte. This extent has in a course of two hundred years been curtailed by various political arrangements, until it was finally settled by the treaty with Spain, in 1795."

Whatever may have been the southernmost point reached by Cabot in coasting America on his return, it is certain that he did not land in Florida, and that the honour of first exploring that country is due to Juan Ponce de Leon. This cavalier, who was governor of Puerto Rico, induced by the vague traditions circulated by the natives of the West Indies, that there was a country in the north possessing a fountain whose waters restored the aged to youth, made it an object of his ambition to be the first to discover this marvellous region. With this view, he resigned the governorship, and set sail with three caravels on the 3rd of March 1512. Steering N. ½ N., he came upon a country covered with flowers and verdure; and as the day of his discovery happened to be Palm Sunday, called by the Spaniards Pasqua Florida, he gave it the name of Florida from this circumstance.1

1 Peter Martyr says (*Dec. iv*, Lok's transl. p. 163), "Joannes Pontius called it Florida, because he founde that *iland* on the day of the resurrection; the Spaniard calleth Easter the flourishing day
He landed on the 2nd of April, and took possession of the country in the name of the king of Castile. The warlike people of the coast of Cautio (a name given by the Indians to all the country lying between Cape Cañaveral and the southern point of Florida) soon, however, compelled him to retreat, and he pursued his exploration of the coast as far as 30° 8' north latitude, and on the 8th of May doubled Cape Cañaveral. Then retracing his course to Puerto Rico, in the hope of finding the island of Bimini, which he believed to be the Land of Youth, and described by the Indians as opposite to Florida, he discovered the Bahamas, and some other islands, previously unknown. Bad weather compelling him to put into the isle of Guanima to repair damages, he despatched one of his caravels, under the orders of Juan Perez de Ortubia and of the pilot Anton de Alaminos, to gain information respecting the desired land, which he had as yet been totally unable to discover. He returned to Puerto Rico on the 21st of September, and a few days afterwards, Ortubia arrived also with news of Bimini. He reported, that he had explored the island,—which he described as large, well wooded, and watered by numerous streams,—but he had failed in discovering the fountain. Oviedo places Bimini at forty leagues west of the island of Bahama. Thus

of the resurrection”. But according to Purchas, it was so named “because it was first discovered by the Spaniards on Palm Sunday, or on Easter Day, which they call Pasqua Florida; and not, as Thevet writeth, for the flourishing verdure thereof”. Herrera says that Ponce de Leon had regard to both reasons.
all the advantages which Ponce de Leon promised himself from this voyage, turned to the profit of geography: the title of “Adelantado of Bimini and Florida”, which was conferred upon him, was purely honorary; but the route taken by him in order to return to Puerto Rico, showed the advantage of making the homeward voyage to Spain by the Bahama Channel; and science became indebted to him also for the first exploration of the small islands, and numberless rocks and shoals, which render this arm of the sea so dangerous to navigation.

Many authors have spoken of the miraculous fountain, whose waters effaced the wrinkles of age and restored departed beauty. Thus, in the old Romance of “Huon de Bordeaux”, mention is made of it in these terms:—“Elle était située dans un lieu désert, et venait du Nil et du Paradis terrestre. Ses vertus étaient telles que si un homme malade en buvait ou en lavait ses mains, il était aussitôt sain et guéri; et s’il était vieux et décrépit, il revenait à l’âge de trente ans, et une femme était aussi fraîche qu’une pucelle.” Edmund Burke also in his anonymously published “European Settlements in America”, humorously remarks, that if this fountain had been discovered, “it would undoubtedly be the best commodity the country could yield, both for domestic consumption and for the foreign markets, and would be a far better basis for stocks and funds than the richest mines of gold or silver.”

In the year 1519, Francisco Garay, Governor of Jamaica, sent out at his own expense four ships, with
skilful pilots, under the command of Alonzo Alvarez de Pineda, with orders to search for some gulf or strait on the continent towards Florida. They sailed during eight or nine months, without meeting with the success anticipated, having seen only the same country which had been already explored by Ponce de Leon. After this, they endeavoured to coast eastwards; but the numerous shoals and reefs which they encountered, together with the contrary winds, and the violence of the currents, compelled them to return. They then held a westerly course, making a careful survey of all the country, bays, rivers, and other objects worthy of notice, till they fell in with Hernando Cortes, who happened at that time to be engaged at Vera Cruz. They made this the limit of their researches, having ranged the coast for the distance of more than three hundred leagues, and taken possession of the country for the crown of Castile. On their homeward voyage, they discovered a mighty river, at whose mouth dwelt a considerable population. They sailed six leagues up this river, on either shore of which they observed about forty villages, situated in a province called Amichel.¹

The next visit to Florida by Europeans was made in the year 1520, by the licentiate Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon, described by Peter Martyr as a “grave man, and of authority, and a citizen of Toledo”. This man wanting slaves to work the Spanish mines, entered into an agreement with some of his associates to kidnap a number of Caribs from the neighbouring islands

¹ Navarrete. Coleccion de los Viages, etc., tom. iii, pp. 63, 148.
in lieu of those who were rapidly disappearing under the hard treatment of the Spaniards. He equipped two ships at San Domingo, and steering either by chance or design, or driven, according to Barcia, by a tempest in a north-westerly direction, he came to the most distant part of the Bahama islands, and thence to that part of Florida between 32° and 33° of north latitude. He then discovered and surveyed two provinces, one named Chicora; and the other, according to Barcia, Duharhe, but, according to Navarrete, Gualdape,—a river, which was named the Jordan.¹

¹ Writers disagree as to the part of the coast upon which Vasquez landed, and as to the river called Jordan. Ribault believed Port Royal to be the same river. He says: "This is the river of Jordan in mine opinion, whereof so much hath been spoken." Laudonnière thought differently, and supposed the Jordan to be further north. (Basanier, p. 16.) The place of landing was called Cape St. Helen's, which in Charlevoix's map is placed near the Santee, making that river the Jordan. This is evidently a mistake. St. Helen's Sound is more than half a degree south of the Santee, and about twenty miles north of Port Royal. The Jordan was doubtless one of the large rivers emptying into this sound. There are three such rivers,—the Coosaw, the Combahee, and the Edisto. Of these the Coosaw is the largest, and is most likely to have been the Jordan. But the Coosaw is only an extension of the Broad river, or Ribault's western arm; the two uniting to encompass the island of Port Royal; so that Ribault, in his expedition up the western arm, [in 1562] may have entered the waters of the Jordan. It is singular, however, that so recent an event as that of the treacherous conduct of Vasquez,—his last voyage having been in 1525,—should not have been remembered by the natives, and caused them to view their new visitors with strong suspicion, if not to have met them with open hostility. But it would not seem, from anything that is written by Ribault or Laudonnière, that the natives had ever before seen or heard of Europeans. (Note by Mr. Jared Sparks, in his "Life of Ribault",—vol. xvii of American Biography.)
after the captain of one of the vessels,—and a Cape St. Helena, so called because discovered on St. Helena's day. The Indians of Duharhe are thus described by Peter Martyr, on the authority of Ayllon:—“These people have a king of a gynantlike stature and height, called Datha, and they say that the queene his wife is not much shorter than himselfe. This lord being demanded, why he alone and his wife should attaine to that talnesse and height of body, and none of the people besides, says, that this gift is not hereditary unto them by nature or from their birth, that they should excede others by that prerogative; but that it proceedeth from violent art, after this manner: While the infants are in the cradell, and under the breastes of the nurses, the Masters of that Art are sent for, who annoint the several members of the infant for certayne dayes, with medicines of certayne hearbes which mollifie the tender bones, so that the bones being presently converted into the softnesse of Luke-warme waxe, they so stretch them out in length oftentimes, that they leave the poore miserable infant almost halfe deade; and after that, they feed the nurse with certaine meats of powerfull vertue. Lastly, the nurse giveth it the brest, while it lyeth covered in warme clothes, and refresheth and cheereth the infant with milke gathered from substantiall meates: and after some fewe days of refreshing, they returne to the dolefull service of wrestling and winding of the bones againe.”

Another of Ayllon's strange stories refers to a country called Inzignanin:—“The inhabitauntes, by
report of their ancestors, say, that a people as tall as
the length of a man’s arme, with tayles of a spanne
long, sometime arrived there, brought thither by sea,
which tayle was not moveable or wavering, as in
foure-footed beastes, but solide, broad above, and
sharpe beneath, as wee see in fishes and crocodiles,
and extended into a bony hardnes. Wherefore, when
they desired to sitt, they used seates with holes through
them, or wanting them, digged upp the earth a spanne
deepe or little more, they must convoy their tayle
into the hole when they rest them.1

Ayllon treated these Indians with remarkable kind-
ness, until he had gained their confidence sufficiently
to induce one hundred and thirty of them to come on
board, when he at once weighed anchor and sailed
for San Domingo with his prize. The greater part of
the wretched captives pined to death, refusing to par-
take of food, or were wrecked in one of the vessels
which foundered at sea. A few experienced perhaps
even a worse fate in Spanish slavery. This ungrateful
cruelty on the part of Ayllon met with loud expres-
sions of indignation even from the Spaniards in San

1 The historian Andres Gonzalez Barcia, who writes under the
pseudonyme or anagram of “Gabriel de Cardenas z Cano”, when
relating this “marvellous report” in his “Ensayo cronologico para
la historia general de la Florida”, 1723, notes parenthetically that
“Polydore Vergil informs us that the Englishmen of the county of
Kent (—‘los Ingleses del condado de Kent’—) are likewise born
with similar tails, [as a punishment] because their ancestors out of
derision cut off the tail of the horse which carried the illustrious
martyr Thomas à Becket.” The tale may be seen at length in
Lambard’s “Perambulation of Kent” 1576, under the division of
Stroud.
INTRODUCTION.

Domingo, and it was hoped that his villany would receive its merited punishment. The contrary however was the case. Instead of punishment, he obtained from the emperor upon his petition the government of the country. Peter Martyr, who was acquainted with Ayllon, makes the following statement upon this point of his history:—“We caused Licentiatu Aiglionus, the senator, to obtain his desire: so that now he is sent away from us and from Cæsar’s majestie [Charles V] through our persuasion. Hee determined to build a newe fleete in Hispaniola, to passe over to those coastes, to plant a colonie; nor shall he want folowers: For all this Spanish nation is so desirous of novelties, that what way soever they be called with a becke onely, or soft whispering voyce, to any thing arising above water, they speedily prepare themselves to flie, and forsake certainties under hope of an higher degree, to followe incertainties; which wee may gather from that which is past.” (Decade vii, translated by Lok, p. 256.)

In the document granting permission from Charles the Fifth to conquer the country,¹ there is, however, a passage to the effect that in the new province there should be no “repartimientos”, or distributions of Indians, and that they should not do personal service except of their own good will and with wages, “as is done with our free vassals and the working men in these kingdoms”. In 1524, Ayllon sent out a prelimi-

Printed in Navarrete’s Coleccion de los viages y descubrimientos, n. iii, p. 153, etc.
nary expedition of two vessels, which returned with a favourable report, and in the year following he went in person with six ships, carrying five hundred men and between eighty and ninety horses. The expedition was most unfortunate. The pilot Diego de Miruelo could not find his way to Chicora, although he had piloted the first expedition in 1520, and died mad with vexation. At length Ayllon landed in a favourable spot, and was received by the Indians with every show of friendship and kindness. It was now their turn to be treacherous. Deceived by appearances, Ayllon sent two hundred men on an exploring expedition, about a day's journey from the coast; the natives entertained and feasted them for four days, and when they were thus put completely off their guard, murdered them in their sleep to a man. This slaughter was followed by an attack on those who remained in the ships, which compelled them to put to sea, and they only reached San Domingo after great sufferings. Accounts differ respecting the cause of Ayllon's death: some say, a broken heart, and others, disease brought on by cold and fatigue. We close our brief notice of him with the following extract from Galvano (Galvam). He says that "he was lost with all his companie, leaving nothing done worthy of memorie. And I cannot tell how it commeth to pass, except it be by the just judgement of God, that of so much gold and precious stones as have been gotten in the Antiles by so many Spaniards, little or none remaineth, but the most part is spent and consumed, and no good thing done." (Galvano's Discoveries of
the World unto the yeere 1555. Published by Hakluyt, 1601, pp. 57 and 63.)

In 1524, Giovanni da Verazzano, a Florentine, who had been sent the year before by Francis I of France to prosecute discoveries in the northern parts of America, coasted from Florida as high as Cape Breton.¹

In 1527, preparations were made in Spain for a fresh expedition to Florida. Pamphilo de Narvaez, having by interest obtained from the Emperor Charles the Fifth the somewhat vague grant of all the lands extending from the Rio de las Palmas to Cape Florida, with the title of "adelantado", and a commission to conquer and govern the provinces within the above limits, set sail from St. Lucar on the 17th of June of that year, with five ships and a force of about six hundred men. A hurricane at Cuba caused so much injury to the expedition, as to deter Narvaez from proceeding to Florida till the ensuing spring. He accordingly put to sea in February 1528, and landed his army at the bay of Santa Cruz in Florida. Having formally taken possession of the country and explored the neighbourhood, they were induced by

¹ Verazzano's Letter addressed to Francis I, is the earliest original account in existence of the Atlantic coast of the United States, nearly the whole extent of which was visited by him during the voyage described in it. (See Reprint in Hakluyt's "Divers Voyages", edited by J. Winter Jones, Esq.) A new translation of this letter, by Joseph G. Cogswell, Esq., made from a copy of the original manuscript in the Magliabechian Library at Florence, accompanied by the Italian text, is printed in the Collections of the New York Historical Society. Second series; vol. i, 1841.
the accounts given by the natives, of the existence of great store of gold, to direct their course to the province of Apalache. After a wearisome march they reached the village or town which constituted the capital of the province and bore its name, on the 26th of June. They now made themselves masters of the place, but were so much harassed by the repeated attacks of the natives, as to be compelled to direct their course to the sea-coast. In their march towards the Bay of Aute (now called the Bay of St. Mark's), they lost nearly one third of their number by the arrows of the Indians, and of the remainder a great many suffered from disease induced by the hardships to which they were exposed. Here, while labouring under a degree of famine which compelled them to kill a horse every third day, they resolved upon constructing vessels, in the best manner that their scanty means afforded them, for encountering the dangers of the sea. They contrived in about five weeks to build five boats, capable of holding from forty to fifty men each. Stirrups, spurs, and every other species of iron they possessed, were converted into nails, saws, axes, and other tools. The ropes were formed of horse-hair, and the sails of the soldier's shirts. They put to sea in these frail barques, and moved along the coast in a westerly direction. In this trying position Narvaez resigned the command, and Cabeça de Vaca (who had in the first instance sailed as the treasurer to the armament), took charge of the small remnant of the expedition. Narvaez was lost with many others in a storm, about
the middle of November, near the mouth of the Mississippi, and the whole undertaking was frustrated. In this expedition Narvaez is said to have discovered the Bay of Pensacola, and to have landed there. Cabeça de Vaca was kindly received by some of the Indians, but a scarcity of food occurring in the winter, the Spaniards were reduced to the necessity of eating each other,—an act which so horrified the natives that they could no longer regard them with favour. Cabeça de Vaca and his companions were reduced to a state of slavery, but afterwards escaped, through a variety of incredible hardships, to Mexico, whence he was enabled finally to set sail for Europe, and arrived at Lisbon on the 15th of August 1537.¹

It has been very generally supposed that Soto was the first European who discovered the Mississippi. He crossed it in the year 1541, near the thirty-fifth degree of north latitude; and after his death the remnant of his companions descended it to its mouth. This view is supported by no less an authority than Mr. Bancroft, and also in an able review of Colonel Pickett's pamphlet on "Soto's invasion in Alabama", 1849, in De Bow's Commercial Review, vol. ix, 1850. There have not, however, been wanting learned investigators into this question, who are of opinion, judging from the account given by Cabeça de Vaca himself, that the honour of this discovery is due either to this latter adventurer, or to Pineda,

¹ The subsequent career of this remarkable man is admirably narrated by Southey, in chap. v of his History of Brazil.
who preceded him in 1519. That the reader may judge more fully for himself, we give at length the two following extracts, in confirmation of the latter view. The first is from a paper, "On the early voyages to America", in review of Robinson's Account of Discoveries in the West, published by the Virginia Historical Society (Southern Literary Messenger for December 1848):

"It is among the adventures of the early Spanish navigators here recorded, that we would recommend all who require the seasoning of romance to search, in order to gratify their taste; and we doubt whether they will be disappointed in perusing the extraordinary narrative of Cabeça de Vaca's journey on foot from Florida to Mexico. Making all due allowance for the perhaps natural desire which Cabeça felt to magnify his exploit, there are too many intrinsic evidences of truth in this narrative to justify a disbelief of its general veracity; and it is conjectured with strong probability, that while we are in the habit of according to Ferdinand de Soto the discovery of the mighty Mississippi, the 'father of waters', it is to Cabeça de Vaca that this merit belongs. At all events, it is highly probable that he passed that river in his voyage along the coast of Florida, and this conjecture is strengthened by the fact, that in his long over-land journey from Florida to Mexico, he does not mention his having encountered it. Mr. Robert Greenhow, of Washington, in a letter addressed to the Historical Society of Virginia, communicating a very valuable memoir on the first dis-
covery of the Chesapeake Bay, declares that 'proofs undeniable exist of the discovery of the Mississippi by the Spaniards many years before the expedition of Ferdinand de Soto in 1541'; and in Mr. Greenhow's forthcoming 'History of Florida, Texas, and Louisiana', we may expect to see this interesting speculation more fully developed."

Our second quotation is from a letter addressed by Mr. Greenhow to De Bow, the editor of the Commercial Review, October 1849, in which he says:—

"In order to show how imperfectly the early records relating to that part of America have been studied, I send you an extract of my work, containing the account of the Second visit of the Spaniards to the mouth of the Mississippi, made some time before the expedition of Hernando de Soto, who has been hitherto universally regarded as the discoverer of the great river, and in commemoration of whose supposed discovery, an artist of much talent is now employed by our government in painting a picture to adorn the halls of the national legislature.

(extract.)

"The mouth of the Mississippi was first discovered in 1519, by Alonzo de Pineda [Alonso Alvarez de Pineda, in Navarrete, iii, p. 64], who gave it the name of Rio del Espiritu Santo,¹ as clearly proved in the history of Florida, Louisiana, and Texas, from the official report of the voyage and the chart annexed to it, of which a fac-simile is preserved [in Navarrete iii, 148].

¹ See note in Portuguese Relation, p. 90.
In the spring of that year [1528], Panfilo de Narváez landed with several hundred men on the shore of a bay, which was most probably the same now called Charlotte Harbour, on the south side of the peninsula of Florida; and thence they marched northward to a country called Apalache, which can be satisfactorily proved to have been the south-eastern portion of the state of Alabama. After remaining for some time suffering from want of food, and undeceived as to the hope of finding rich nations to be plundered, they built boats on a bay named by them Baia de Cavallos, in commemoration of the slaughter of their horses; which appears to have been the same now known as Choc-tahatchee Bay, communicating with Pensacola Bay on the west by Santa Rosa Sound. With their departure from this place, begins the following extract from the history, for which the only authority is the narrative published by Alvar Nunez [Cabeça] de Vaca, the treasurer of the expedition, and one of the four survivors of the party engaged in it:—

"From the place of embarkation, the Spaniards pursued their voyage towards the west for seven days before reaching the open gulf, which they at length entered, through a strait, between the mainland and an island,—most probably through the entrance of the Bay of Pensacola, which is just ninety miles from the eastern extremity of the Bay of Choctahatchee. Thence they continued their navigation westward along the coast, suffering constantly from insufficiency of food, and often from thirst, as their horse-skin bottles proved useless; and they were
obliged in many cases to have severe combats with the natives, in order to procure fresh water.

"Wending their way thus slowly along the coast, the Spaniards, at the end of a month, had reached a small cluster of islands near the mainland, where they were attacked by a numerous party of natives in canoes, who chased them during the whole day, and annoyed them considerably by volleys of stones and arrows. 'Thus' (writes Cabeza de Vaca in his narrative) 'we continued our voyage through that day (November 1st) until the hour of vespers; when my boat being the foremost, I observed a point of land, beyond which was a very great river, and I halted at an islet off the point to wait for the other boats. The governor (Narvaez), however, would not come up; but chose rather to remain in a bay very near, where were many small islands; and there we joined company, and took up fresh water from the sea, into which the river poured in a torrent.\(^1\) As we had eaten our corn raw for two days, we landed upon the island to parch some; but finding no wood there, we agreed to go to the river beyond the point, a league distant: on going there, however, the current was so violent, that we were entirely unable to enter, and were driven away from the land, notwithstanding all our efforts and labour to reach it."

The original passage, which is not given by Mr. Greenhow, is as follows:—"Navegamos aquel día hasta hora de visperas que mi varca que yva delante descubrio

---

\(^1\) Compare Portuguese Relation, p. 157; and Biedma's Narrative, p. 199.
una punta que la tierra hazia, y del otro cabo se via un rio muy grande: y en una ysleta que hazia la punta hize yo surgir por esperar las otras varcas. El governador no quiso llegar, antes se metio por una baya muy cerca de alli, en que avia muchas isletas: y alli nos juntamos, y desde la mar tomamos agua dulce, porque el rio entrava en la mar de avenida. Y por tostar algun maiz de lo que trayamos, porque ya avia dos dias que lo comiamos crudo, saltamos en aquella isla, mas como no hallamos leña, acordamos de yr al rio que estava detras de la punta una legua de alli; y yendo era tanta la corriente que no nos dexava en ninguna manera llegar, antes nos apartava de la tierra: y nosotros trabajando y porfiando por tomarla.”

(La relacion y comentarios del governador Alvar Nuñez Cabeça de Vaca, 1555, 4to., fol. xv and xvi.)

“The river here mentioned,” proceeds Mr. Greenhow, “could have been no other than the Mississippi, the only stream flowing into the Mexican Gulf, or into any other sea from North America, the waters of which remain so pure and unmixed with those of the sea, as to be potable at the distance of a league from their outlet. This outlet had been already seen in 1519 by Pineda, who represented it on his chart under the name of Rio del Espiritu Santo; or the merit of discovering the greatest river of North America, if not of the whole world, should have been assigned to Panfilo de Narvaez and Cabeza de Vaca.”

Reference having already been made to the three accounts, directly or proximately given by parties engaged in the expedition of De Soto, we propose here
to make an especial appeal to the reader's judgment as to their individual or correlative value, with the view of giving an answer to those who have attempted either to disparage, or altogether to annihilate, the credibility of our author. For this purpose, we shall commence by quoting first the statements of those who aim at attributing an apocryphal character to the entire narrative; and secondly, those of Mr. Theodore Irving, who would assign to the Gentleman of Elvas a lower standard of credibility than to the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega. From these antagonistic statements themselves, we hope to prove the fallacy of the respective charges, and to confirm our proof by reference to two synoptical tables of such points in the three narratives, placed side by side, as mutually tend to establish the validity of the main story, and expose the extravagancies of the Spanish historian Garcilasso.

In the life of Father Marquette, in Mr. Jared Sparks' American Biography, vol. x, the following passage occurs:—"It is generally believed that the Mississippi River was first discovered by Ferdinand de Soto, as early as 1541. The accounts of his expedition in Florida are so highly exaggerated, so indefinite, and in many parts so obviously false, that little more can be inferred from them, than that he passed far into the country, had many combats with the natives, and finally died in the interior. The probability is so strong, however, that he and his party actually crossed the Mississippi, that it has usually been assumed as a historical fact....
"Soto died on the 21st of May; and his followers, under Moscoso, as the story says, constructed briga- 
gntines, in which they sailed down the river to its mouth....

"The first account of Soto's expedition purports to have been written by one of the Portuguese adven-
turers, who accompanied it throughout, and returned to his native country.... The book was first published in 1557, more than fifteen years after the principal events it narrates. There is much show of exactness in regard to dates; but the account was evidently drawn up for the most part from memory, being vague in its descriptions, and indefinite as to locali-
ties, distances, and other points usually noted by journalists.

"The Inca Garcilaso de la Vega completed his work on Florida in 1591. It was first printed at Lisbon in 1605. The author's style is flowing and agreeable, but his fancy constantly takes the lead of his judgment, and no tale is too marvellous for his pen.... A large portion of his work is taken up with the adventures of Soto. Although he wrote more than forty years after the death of his hero, yet he had no other written materials for his guidance than those which had been furnished by the 'Gentleman of Elvas'; and in fact the narrative of this unknown person is the only authority which can be considered of any value respecting the wanderings of Soto. In several points, Garcilaso differs from his original. Citri de la Guette says, that he took his account chiefly from the narration of a common soldier, who
was in Soto's expedition, and this at least forty years after the events. Little could be gathered from such a source which is worthy of confidence. Both of the accounts are too romantic and vague for history; yet some of the names of places and of Indian tribes and descriptions of the country, in the narrative of the anonymous Portuguese writer, could hardly have been given, except from personal observation; and they render it in the highest degree probable that Soto crossed the Mississippi near the thirty-fourth degree of latitude.

"It may be doubted, at least, whether either of these works can be trusted as affording genuine historical materials. They have been cited by respectable writers in default of other authorities; but they border so closely upon the regions of romance, that they may as justly be ranked in this class of compositions, as in that of history. This is generally conceded in regard to Garcilaso. His predecessor, the Gentleman of Elvas, is thought to have higher claims, and perhaps he has; yet whoever follows him closely will be likely to run into ten errors in arriving at a single truth, with the additional uncertainty of being able to distinguish the former from the latter. The narrative is, moreover, disfigured with descriptions of atrocious acts of injustice, oppression, and cruelty. In short, if this narrative is worthy of credit, few readers will be inclined to dissent from the remark of Philip Briet, in his *Annales Mundi*, that it is difficult to decide whether cruelty or avarice was the predominant trait in the character of Soto.”
Again:—in the *North American Review* for July 1847, in an article on Gayarré's *History of Louisiana*, the writer says:—"The first chapter of M. Gayarré's work is devoted to the apocryphal story of Hernando de Soto's overland expedition to the lower Mississippi, which he discovered in 1541, of his death the following year, and of a remnant of his followers descending the river to its mouth, and thence returning along the shores of the Gulf in safety to Mexico. All this is a romantic and interesting tale; but for how large a portion of it we are indebted only to the vivid fancy of the Spanish historian, it is impossible to say; exaggerations and imaginative details may easily be detected in it by internal evidence. Spain made no attempt to take possession of the country to which this expedition, if real, had given it a valid claim, nor did any of its subjects venture to follow the track of Soto's discoveries."

Mr. Theodore Irving, in the preface to his *Conquest of Florida*, draws the following comparison between the Gentleman of Elvas and the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega:—"The Inca is most to be depended upon,—the Spanish cavalier from whom he derived his principal information being more likely to be admitted to the intimate councils of his commander than one of a different nation, and being free from the tinge of national jealousy which may have influenced the statements of the Portuguese."

We have given these three quotations all together, because the charges contained in them are alike in character, though different in degree, and, as we hope
to show, present powerful arguments in refutation of each other.

Now it is not only from a sense of the respect due to the high authority of Mr. Jared Sparks, but from our own conviction of the general correctness of his opinions on this question, that we welcome the statements above quoted from him in favour of the superior credibility of our author. While however we acknowledge that the investigation of the narrative justifies his remark, that "whoever follows it closely will be likely to run into ten errors in arriving at a simple truth";—a fact not to be wondered at when the toils of this laborious and perilous expedition are taken into consideration,—yet we deprecate the expression that "both of the accounts are too romantic and vague for history", as calculated, when coming from such an authority, to lead the reader into utter distrust of the whole story. We fear that the general consideration of the subject has led Mr. Sparks to blend the characteristics of the Spanish and Portuguese historians, and to transfer to the latter more of that tendency to romance for which the former is remarkable, than we believe the careful reader will be willing to concede; and here we would refer to the table which follows, to show that three accounts, which, though written independently of each other and confessedly differing in minute detail, can present so many points of agreement in regular sequence, must have been founded on facts which are not, in so far as those points are concerned, "too romantic and vague for history."


Table of Names mentioned either in two or in each of the three Accounts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE GENTLEMAN OF ELVAS.</th>
<th>GARCILASSO DE LA VEGA.</th>
<th>BIEDMA.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cutifa-Chiqui.</td>
<td>Xuula.</td>
<td>Xuula.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coste.</td>
<td>Talisse.</td>
<td>Itali.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coça.</td>
<td>Tascahuca.</td>
<td>Fasazaluca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicaça.</td>
<td>Chisca.</td>
<td>Quizquiz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casqui.</td>
<td>Quiguate.</td>
<td>Quigante.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tatalicoya.</td>
<td>Tula.</td>
<td>Tula.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayas.</td>
<td>Tula.</td>
<td>Quipana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quipana.</td>
<td>Anilo.</td>
<td>Anicoyanque.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aguacay.</td>
<td>Lacane.</td>
<td>Lacane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacane.</td>
<td>Soacatino.</td>
<td>Xuacatino.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above table, as we have said, presents too many points of agreement in the three accounts to leave any excuse to those who would venture to
impeach the credibility of the main story; and if this be granted, the next inquiry will naturally be, which of the three contains the greatest number of details of a character serviceable to history and geography, but neither dictated by, nor catering to, an exaggerative spirit of romance. In this respect, not only Sparks and Bancroft, but every other critic that we have read upon the subject, unite in acknowledging the superior credibility of the Gentleman of Elvas.

Mr. Bancroft's observations are as follows (History of the United States, edit. 1834, vol. i, p. 66):—

"On Soto's expedition, by far the best account is that of the Portuguese eye-witness. ... This narrative is remarkably good, and contains internal evidence of its credibility. The work of Vega is an extravagant romance, yet founded upon facts. Numbers and distances are magnified, and everything embellished with great boldness. His history is not without its value, but must be consulted with extreme caution."

For the rest, Mr. Sparks's criticism entirely disarms Mr. Theodore Irving of his arguments in favour of Garcilasso de la Vega. Any reader of the work will readily concede the correctness of the remark, that "the author's fancy constantly takes the lead of his judgment, and that no tale is too marvellous for his pen". Wisely did Mr. Irving, with the object he had in view, select it for the basis of his romantic and ably-written story. But if, as we believe, such charge is not to be fairly brought against the Portuguese narrator, the details here presented to the reader, difficult as they may be to follow, from the
hindrances which the perils and toils of the route must have opposed to constant journalizing, form a subject worthy of the attention of the Hakluyt Society, both in an historical and geographical point of view.

To assist the reader's judgment as to the extravagancies of Garcilasso, and the greater accuracy of the Gentleman of Elvas and Biedma, we here give another synoptical table, exhibiting the statements respectively given in the three accounts, with particular reference to numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLACES MENTIONED</th>
<th>GENTLEMAN OF ELVAS</th>
<th>BIEDMA</th>
<th>GARCILASSO DE LA VEGA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>John Ortiz came to meet us with 10 or 11 principal Indians.</td>
<td>9 Indians.</td>
<td>50 Indians.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>The Governor left Calderon at the port with 30 horsemen and 70 footmen.</td>
<td>26 horsemen. 62 foot soldiers.</td>
<td>40 horsemen. 80 foot soldiers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Patofs. | The cacique gave the Governor 700 Indians to bear burdens. | 800 Indians. | 4000; and 4000 besides as an escort. 8000*[See note p.xxxv.]
| Cutifachiqui. | They found 14 arrobas of pearls in a temple. | 6 or 7 arrobas. | 20 arrobas. |

[Table continued.]
## Introduction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mavila (the battle).</td>
<td>2,500 Indians killed.</td>
<td>20 Christians killed.</td>
<td>Upwards of 11,000 Indians killed.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18 Christians killed.</td>
<td>250 Christians wounded.</td>
<td>82 Christians killed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150 Christians wounded, with 700 wounds.</td>
<td>— 680 arrow-shots.</td>
<td>1770 Spaniards wounded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 horses killed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>45 horses killed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicaça (the battle).</td>
<td>11 Christians killed.</td>
<td>13 or 14 Christians killed.</td>
<td>40 Spaniards killed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400 hogs burnt.</td>
<td>300 hogs burnt.</td>
<td>Nearly all perished.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The following note is from the Hon. Albert Gallatin’s valuable “Synopsis of the Indian Tribes” (Archaeologia Americana, ii, 106).

If we were to place implicit faith in the accounts given by Garcilaso de la Vega of the number of Indians in various places, we should infer a greater population than was found to exist one hundred and fifty years later. Considering the sources from which he derived his information, the proneness of common soldiers to swell the number of enemies, and the habitual and notorious exaggeration of the Spaniards of his time, we will in that respect give the preference to the more sober statements of the Portuguese narrator, who kills only 2,500 Indians by the fire and sword, at the storming of Mavila, whilst Garcilaso swells the number to 11,000. Yet Garcilaso did not intend to impose on his readers, or exceed, according to his knowledge, the bounds of credibility. Born in Peru, he was deceived by an erroneous analogy, and saw nothing extraordinary in the accounts given to him of eight to twelve thousand Indians collected together. In another place, at Cofaqui or Patofa, the last inhabited district before the arrival of the Spaniards at Cofachiqui, the cacique, who was very friendly, gave them, according to Garcilaso, 4000 warriors to escort them, and 4000 retainers to carry their supplies and clothing. It must be observed that the total amount of their baggage was such, that, on their departure from Anhayca, each soldier carried his supply on his back. On the seventh day of their march through an uninhabited country, the army was arrested by the termination of the path which they had followed.
Mr. Theodore Irving, in the revised edition of his *Conquest of Florida*, published during the present year, remarks, that “nothing is more perplexing than to make out the route of De Soto in conformity to modern landmarks”. It is only left to us in meeting this perplexity, to endeavour to reconcile the three accounts as far as possible with the various explanations which have been offered by learned and industrious American critics, aided by the personal observations of travellers. Of these investigators, the most careful and laborious have been Dr. J. H. Mc'Culloh (*Researches, philosophical and antiquarian, concerning the aboriginal history of America*. Baltimore, 1829); the Honourable Albert Gallatin (*Sy-
nopsis of the Indian Tribes, published in the second volume of the Archaeologia Americana. Cambridge, 1836); Mr. Thomas Nuttall (A Journal of Travels into the Arkansa territory during the year 1819. Philadelphia, 1821); and Dr. J. W. Monette (History of the discovery and settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi; 2 vols. New York, 1846).

Mr. Irving also, who seems to have made use of all these commentators except Dr. Monette, has added to his revised edition of the Conquest of Florida some notes upon the route, which, aided as they are by the personal observations of Mr. G. R. Fairbanks, who travelled over the south-easterly portion of it himself, deserve particular respect and credence. The map which we have used in guiding us through these puzzling accounts and their various renderings, is that published in 1839 by David H. Burr, Geographer to the House of Representatives of the United States, on the scale of one-inch to ten statute miles.

De Soto arrived in the Bay of Espiritu Santo, on the western coast of East Florida, on the 25th of May 1539, and after four days spent in taking observations of the vicinity, landed his army probably in that part of it known as Hillsborough Bay. Six miles in a north-westerly direction brought them to an Indian village named Ucita by the Portuguese historian, but Hirrihigua by the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega.

Their onward route towards the north-east, passing through the province of Paracossi, or Urribarracuxi, is thus minutely described by Dr. Monette:
"The army pursued an Indian trace, which traversed the low, marshy region south and east of the Hillsborough River, towards the north-east. Their guides led them through thick woods, with tangled vines and undergrowth; through swamps, marshes, and deep morasses, almost impassable for man or horse. ... After several days of severe toil and great perplexity, in threading their way through swamps and bogs, they at length came to a deep river, which was out of its banks from recent rains. On each side of the stream, for a mile and a half in width, was a low swamp, which was excessively boggy when not completely covered with water. Three days were spent in continued and fruitless attempts to find a firm crossing-place.... A rude Indian bridge, made by a tree felled in from each bank, and joined by a floating raft, enabled them to cross, while the horses were obliged to swim. They were now, in all probability, on the Withlacoochy River, in the region of the Wahoo swamp; and pursuing their route, they crossed from the south to the north side, and continued their march towards the north. After almost incredible difficulties, the army arrived at the village of Acuera, about thirty miles north of the Withlacoochy or Amaxura River, situated in a beautiful and fertile bottom, environed by extensive fields of corn, and by gardens, besides beautiful copses of fruit trees.... Near the village of Acuera, De Soto remained for twenty days.... The Spaniards were now about seventy or eighty miles distant from Hillsborough Bay, in a due north direction, and about
twelve miles south-west from Orange Lake....De Soto determined to march for the country of Ocali [Cale], about forty miles further north. In the first thirty miles, they passed over a thin, barren region, and some fine forests, probably north-west of the present site of Fort Micanopy, before they entered the fertile region of Ocali. For twenty miles further, they passed through a fruitful valley, thickly inhabited, and abounding in fields. At length they arrived at the chief town, called, after the country, Ocali. This was one of the most extensive towns in Florida, and contained six hundred houses. It was situated upon the south side of a river, in all probability the Suwanee, or the Santa Fé branch. Here the Spaniards remained several days."

It were almost vain to attempt to trace the precise positions of the various so-called towns or villages which next occur, as referred to by the Portuguese narrator, and by him alone, until they arrive at the country of Vitachuco or Palache. This province would seem to have extended northward, according to Dr. Monette, as far as the Suwanee river, which forms the southern limit of Hamilton County, Florida. Ochile was its frontier province; and the town of Vitachuco itself is supposed by the same author to have been about twelve miles south-east of Suwanee river, or the northern verge of the province itself.

This account, however, we think carries the journey too far north; and we incline to agree with Mr. Fairbanks, in placing Ocali in the neighbourhood of Fort King, and Vitachuco about fifteen miles west of
Fort Micanopy. He says that in this vicinity are numerous lakes and prairies, which might be taken as the scene of a battle, described very fully by Garcilasso de la Vega.

Their route thence brought them to a large and deep river, doubtless the Suwanee, which they crossed on rafts, and came to the village of Uzela or Ossachile, which Mr. Fairbanks takes to be Suwanee old town. In journeying hence towards the country of Apalache, they crossed a "great morass", and after a dangerous and toilsome march came to a deep river bordered by dense forests, which was in all probability the Oscilla, and about twelve miles beyond was the town of Anhayca. The swamp crossed is thought by Mr. Fairbanks to be that at the head of the Estauhatchee, a river emptying into the gulf. He remarks, that it could not have been the Okefenokee, as supposed by Mr. M'Culloh, as that is nearly one hundred and fifty miles from Apalache, and is altogether unlike the morass, and no Indian highway goes through it; its diameter being twelve or fifteen miles. Almost any wet Florida swamp at the head of a river would answer the description given of the morass crossed by De Soto. He adds, that from his personal knowledge of the country, he feels confident that the course we have thus far marked out must be nearly, if not exactly the one taken; and the fact, that the Seminoles kept the whole army of the United States at bay for seven years, and now require to be bought out, is itself an evidence of the nature of the country.—*Vide* Kerr's *Voyages and Travels*, vol. v.
INTRODUCTION.

page 466; M'Culloh's *Researches*, page 524; Darby's *Florida*, pp. 19-20.

Upon the position of the town of Anhaica or Anhayca, and of the Bay of Aute, in its vicinity, Mr. Gallatin makes the following observations:—"This was situated in the vicinity of a port into which he [De Soto] ordered his vessels, and which, from the position designated, must necessarily have been somewhere in Apalachee Bay. We cannot therefore err much in placing Anhayca in the vicinity of the Ockockona river. East, and not far from it, the names of Uzachil and Anille [Axille] are mentioned, and there is a river precisely in the same position, which to this day is called Oscilla. But I have not been able to ascertain whether this is either an Uchee or Muskhogee name, or whether it may not have been subsequently given to the river by the Spaniards in commemoration of De Soto's expedition. I have been equally unfortunate in my inquiries respecting the etymology of the name Apalachee; whether it belongs to the language of any of the existing nations, or whether it has been perpetuated from De Soto's time. It is certain that the river Appalachicola is known to the Muskhoseys by no other name than that of Chatta Hatchee, or Rock River. The only name mentioned in that vicinity, having any known affinity with an Indian language, is that of a village near the sea-port, which in the Spanish relation is called Aute. In the Muskhogee language, *autti* or *oby*, means an island.

"De Soto's officers discovered in the course of the
winter another and better port, sixty computed leagues west of Aute. This was called Ochus, and must have been either Pensacola, or the entrance of the Mobile. Instead, however, of proceeding in that direction, De Soto, on the information of an Indian boy, determined to march northwardly in search of a gold region."

Upon the same subject, Mr. M'Cullooh makes the following remarks:—"The Apalachy Indians, at the time the French settled in Louisiana, lived around and above the junction of Flint and Cattahouche rivers, and, most probably, had lived there since the time of Soto. The town of Anhayca I have placed north of the river Uche, from the following incident in Soto's history:—After Calderona, who was marching to join him at Anhayca, had passed the marsh of Apalache, which I cannot make out to be other than the Oha-hichee swamp, he entered on a large plain, over which he marched about five leagues to a deep stream,—the Uche river, I presume,—where they fought a battle with the Indians. Now near this place must have been the town of Anhayca, for Garcilazo says, that the Spaniards encamped there ought to have heard the noise of the engagement. We cannot be far wrong in thus locating Apalache; for the seaport of Aute, which undoubtedly was at the head of the bay of St. Mark's, was about thirty leagues distant."

Dr. Monette's observations place this town somewhat more northerly, but yet in a position sufficiently approximating to the other two, allowance
being made for the almost inevitable want of precision in the original documents. He says:—"That part of the province in which the town of Anhayca was situated, is, by general assent, placed from about one hundred to one hundred and thirty miles north of the present site of St. Mark's. As to the immediate site of this town, nothing definite can be ascertained; but it was probably in the vicinity of some of the tributaries of the Suwanee River, or nearer the Flint. The Spaniards, pursuing their circuitous marches, considered it nine days' march from the sea, and near one hundred leagues north from the Bay of Espiritu Santo. The province was populous, and had numerous villages and extensive fields. There was no gold in the country... While in winter quarters at Anhayca, De Soto repeatedly sent out strong detachments through the surrounding country, to the distance of forty or fifty miles, to explore the country, and inquire for the gold region. Some of these detachments were out as long as a week or ten days, and returned and reported the country on the north fertile, populous, and free from marshes. At length, one of the most intrepid and persevering captains was despatched southward, with a strong detachment of horse and foot, to reach the sea." Mr. Irving places Anhayca in the neighbourhood of the modern town of Tallahassee; and Colonel Pickett says, Indian traditions confirm this opinion.

After wintering at Anhayca, they marched northwardly five or six days, and crossing, on the fourth or fifth, a broad and very rapid river,—probably the
Ochlockony,—they reached Capachiqui. Ten days from Capachiqui, brings them, on the 21st March, to Toalli, or Otoa, the largest village yet seen, but the site of which we are unable to conjecture. It is described, however, as near Achese, on a small river, which was probably the southern branch of the Ocmulgee, Ochis being, according to Mr. Gallatin, the Muskhogee name of that river.

They left Achese—the Chisi of Biedma—on the 1st of April; and on the 4th came to Altamaca, the Altapaha of Biedma, which name, M'Culloh suggests, is probably preserved in that of the river Alapapaha, the midmost branch of the Sawanee river, but which we presume to be the river Altamaha itself, of which the Ocmulgee is a branch.

In the middle of April they reached Ocute and Cofaqui, and on the 28th or 29th of the month came to Cutifachiqui or Cofachiqui. Dr. Monette places this province on the head-waters of the Savannah river, and the chief town probably in the peninsula at the junction of the Broad and Savannah rivers. On this point Mr. Gallatin has the following remarks, which give to the location of Cutifachiqui a tolerable amount of certainty: “Twelve days’ march more, in the same direction, brought him [De Soto] to Xuala in the mountains; and this was the termination of his travels northwardly. The distance from the vicinity of St. Mark’s to the sources of the French Broad, or of the Hiwassee, both tributary streams of the Tennessee, is about three hundred and fifty miles in a direct line. This determines the position of Cofachiqui, which was
certainly on a river emptying into the Atlantic, not far south of the thirty-fourth degree of north latitude, on the Oconee, or on the Savannah River. The statement, therefore, that, according to Indian information, it was but two days' journey to the sea, is erroneous. Between Anhayca and Cofachiqui, we find the two names of Achese, on a river which the Spaniards ascended some days, and of Ocute, a fruitful country. Ochis is the Muskhogee name of the Okmulgee river. Oketa, in the same language means woman; and Cohwita in Uchee means man, and is the well-known name of a Creek town. These detached names afford but a slight indication of that part of the country having been at that time occupied by the Creeks. But from Cofachiqui to the Mississippi, we have a continued series of names, which seems to leave no doubt respecting the several nations along De Soto's line of march, from the time he left Cofachiqui."

We further quote from a note by Colonel Pickett, which leaves no doubt on our mind as to the real locality of Cofachiqui. The colonel says, "that all Indian tradition places the town of Cofachiqui on the east bank of the Savannah, at the modern Silver Bluff, Barnwell district, South Carolina. About 1735, a young Irishman, George Gilpin, settled upon the ruins of Cofachiqui, and gave it the name of Silver Bluff, owing to the tradition, that De Soto and his troops searched there for silver in the bed of the river, and among the various strata of the Bluff, some of which resembled silver ore."

In seven days' march due north from that place,
De Soto came to Chalaque, probably a tribe of Cherokees, some of whom do not pronounce the letter r, and call themselves Chellakees. The next province reached by the Spaniards was Xualla, from which their course was westwardly, bending to the south.

It is possible, that the town of Qualatche, which is situated on the very source of the Catahootche river, designates the station of Xualla,—Colonel Pickett says it was probably in Habersham county. From hence they proceeded, in two days, to Canasagua, a name perhaps retained in the river Conesaugo, which runs nearly along the 8° of longitude (west from Washington) from the mountains, and finally empties into the Coosa river.

Leaving Canasagua, in five days they reached the town of Chiaha, or Ichiaha, which all agree in placing on the Etowee branch of the Coosa river; and Dr. Monette supposes it to have been in that part of Georgia now designated as Floyd County. Colonel Pickett places it on the site of the modern town of Rome. He says, that De Soto had now reached the confluence of the Oostanaula and Etowah, which make the Coosa, and that the Spaniards mistook the peninsula on which the village stood for an island, Mr. Meek also states, that there is no such island now in the Coosa, and thinks it probable that the Spaniards either mistook the peninsula formed by the junction of the two rivers for an island, or that these two rivers were originally united so as to form an island near their present confluence. He adds, that he has heard this latter supposition asserted by two
persons well acquainted with the country. Crossing this river, they entered the province of Coste or Acoste on the 2nd of July, and thence marched to the province of Coça or Cosa, the principal village of which they reached on the 26th of July. Mr. M'Culloh here says: "From Acoste they marched into the province of Cosa. This province they state to be about one hundred leagues in extent; and that the village of the cacique, which was also called Cosa, was at the other extremity of the province from whence they had entered. It was situated upon the banks of a river. Every part of this description is strictly correct, as applied to that town, which is now called in our maps, 'Old Coosa', in north latitude about 33° 30', on Coosa river."

They remained at Coça twenty-five days, and left it on the 20th of August; and after passing through several villages, enumerated only by the Portuguese historian, came to Tallise on the 18th of September. This town lay upon a very rapid river, which M'Culloh considers to be the Talisse of the maps, lying at the elbow of Talapoosa river. They crossed this river, and in six days came to Tascaluça. Bossu (Travels in Louisiana, 282) says, that above sixty leagues above the junction of the Tombecbe and Alabama rivers, and up this last, is a ford called by the Choctaws Taskalousas, which signifies white mountain or hill, where we may suppose the army to have crossed.

A few days afterwards, De Soto proceeded to the south-east, until he arrived at the town of Mauvilla, or Mavilla, on the site of which Mr. Irving gives the following note:—"This town is supposed to have stood on
the north side of the Alabama, and at a place now called Choctaw Bluff, in the county of Clarke, about twenty-five miles above the junction of that river with the Tombecbe, within a hundred miles from Pensacola; and this opinion is strengthened by the fact, that aged Indians in the neighbourhood, at the present day, point it out as the site of the great battle between De Soto and the Mobilians. There is little doubt that it gave the name to the present river and bay of Mobile. The letters \( v \) and \( b \) are often used indifferently in Spanish in place of each other, and articulated in nearly the same manner. Charlevoix, in his *Journal Historique*, let. 33, p. 452, says:—‘Garcilasso de la Vega, dans son Histoire de la Floride, parle d’une Bourgade appelée Mauvilla, laquelle a sans doute donné son nom à la rivière, et à la nation qui étoit établie sur ses bords. Ces Mauviliens étoient alors très-puissans; à peine en reste-t’il aujourd’hui quelques vestiges.’

Their onward route from Mauvila has been elaborated with such zeal and patient attention by Dr. Monette, that we feel justified in submitting it to the reader’s favourable acceptance, contenting ourselves with offering by the way such corrective suggestions as may arise from our own deductions, or those of Mr. M‘Culloh. Dr. Monette’s remarks run thus:—“One month after the great disaster of Mauvile, finding that his horses and men were now sufficiently recovered from their wounds to travel, De Soto set out on his march toward the north, near the last of November. ... After five days’ march they arrived at ...
and wide river', which was in all probability the Tombigby, below the mouth of the Black Warrior. This they crossed after much hard fighting with a large body of Indians, who disputed the passage for twelve days, until large boats were constructed to ferry the army across. This was probably in Marengo county, Alabama, not far from Chickasâ Creek. After this they marched on toward the north-west for five days more, when they came to another river, probably the Pearl, which was not so large as the first. Here they met with some opposition from the natives, and passed on in the province of Chicasâ, within the state of Mississippi. The first river crossed by De Soto and his army after leaving Mauvile was 'a deep and wide river', where they were vigorously opposed by a large body of Indians, who, stationed for six miles on the west bank, defeated every attempt to cross for twelve days, until the Spaniards had completed a very large scow or ferry-boat. . . . Some have erroneously supposed this was the Black Warrior itself; but De Soto directed his general course west of north from Mauvile, and of course he would not reach the Black Warrior, which was toward the north-east; besides, the latter river does not answer to the size and depth of the first river crossed in their march for Chicasâ. The second river crossed in this march was probably the main Pearl river, somewhere in Leake county. Thence the course was more toward the north; and after eight or ten days' march in that direction, they came to the village of Chicasâ, situated in a beautiful plain, fertile and well-watered, probably in the valley of the Yalobu-
INTRODUCTION.

sha, and in that portion embraced in Yalobusha county. The expedition arrived at this village late in December, about one month after its departure from Mauville. It was composed of about two hundred small houses or wigwams. . . . The winter had now set in. . . . De Soto determined to remain in the village until spring. . . . This was supposed by the Spaniards to have been the chief town of the Chicasâ Indians, whose territory extended to the first river they crossed after leaving Mauville (A.D. 1541). After this disaster (the battle and conflagration of Chicasâ), the army soon removed to another village, about three miles distant, called Chicaçilla, where they fortified themselves, and remained until the last of March. . . About the 1st of April, De Soto broke up his winter-quarters, and set out again toward the north-west. The first day's march westward brought them to the vicinity of a strongly fortified town called Alibamo, or as the Portuguese narrator writes it, Alimamu. This is the town from which the river Alabama takes its name. It was situated on the east bank of a deep but narrow river, with high banks, in all probability the same now known as the Tallahatchy, and probably not far above the junction of the Yalobusha . . . The next day this post was regularly attacked and carried by storm. . . . The Spaniards remained in camp four days, to recruit their strength and for the recovery of the wounded.

"Their next march was westward; and crossing the river at an easy ford they left the province of Chicasâ. For seven days they traversed an unin-
habited country, abounding in swamps and forests, where they were often compelled to swim their horses in the route. At length they came in sight of a village called Chisca [by Garcilasso de la Vega, and Quizquiz by the Portuguese author and Biedma],—which was seated near a wide river. As this was the largest river they had yet seen, they called it the 'Rio Grande'. It was the same now called the Mississippi. . . . Since their departure from the fortress of Alibamo, the Spaniards had traversed a vast and dense forest, 'intersected by numerous streams'; doubtless the creeks and bayous of the Tallahatchy region. Wearied in the toilsome march, they remained several days in camp at the village of Chisca, near the Great River. 'The river was low and both banks were high.' Incessantly harassed by the hostility of the natives, they resumed the line of march up the eastern bank during four days. Having found an open region, they encamped until boats should be built for crossing to the western side. Twenty days were required to build them in sufficient size and number to transport the army and horses. No sooner were the boats completed, than De Soto began to cross his army to the western shore...He at length succeeded, with the aid of a friendly chief, in obtaining for his whole army a safe passage. 'At this place,' says the Portuguese historian, 'the river was half a league from one shore to the other, so that a man standing still could not be seen from the opposite shore. It was of great depth and of wonderful rapidity. It was very muddy, and was always filled
with floating trees and timber, carried down by the force of the current.' Much doubt and uncertainty has obtained as to the precise point at which De Soto reached the Mississippi. It was evidently much below the latitude of Memphis, where he was toiling four days in advancing twelve leagues up the river, and seven days in his westward march through swamps and deep forests from the uplands east of the Tallahatchy. At no point above Helena are the highlands, on the east side of the river, more than ten or fifteen miles distant. The point where De Soto crossed the river was probably within thirty miles of Helena. The changes of the channel in the lapse of three hundred years may have been such as to defy identification now.” Mr. Irving says the spot “was probably the lowest Chickasaw Bluff, one of the ancient crossing-places between the thirty-fourth and thirty-fifth parallel of latitude”.

We do not venture to trace the route beyond this upon the map, inasmuch as it is so complicated as to have caused the greatest perplexity and difference of opinion to all who have endeavoured to follow it. We shall therefore content ourselves with placing before the reader the respective conclusions of Mr. M‘Culloh and of Dr. Monette.

**M‘CULLOH.**

After having built boats, they crossed the Mississippi, somewhere, I presume, about twenty or thirty miles below the mouth of the Arkansaw river. They call the country where they landed the province of Aquixo, a name

**MONETTE.**

The whole expedition having safely crossed to the west side of the river,… the army prepared to advance north-westward into the interior of what is now the State of Arkansas. After nearly five days' march through a level
we cannot recognize in any Indian words preserved on our maps. As far as can be collected from their account, they marched across the province, crossed a river (the Wachita), and on the fifth day, from a high eminence (probably near the present southern old Cado village), they discovered the town of Casquin, on the banks of a river (Red river) as great as the Guadalquivir at Cordova.

[It is not unlikely that by this name the Kaskaia Indians are intended, but they are now found in the interior of the country. According to Long's Expedition, ii, 112, they frequent the country about the sources of the Platte, Arkansaw, and Rio del Norte, and extend their hunting excursions to Red River, and the sources of the Brassos.—Note.]

They marched up this river to some little villages where the cacique held his court (probably the northern old Cado villages), and from hence they proceeded to Capaha; in which word we may recognize a town of the Kappas, or Quapaw Indians, who even at this day, have their towns extending across the Wachita from the Red to the Arcansaw river. It is impossible to say where Capaha stood, but if a locality be deemed necessary, we may suppose it to have been about the western Cado village, which on Pike's map is near the 18° of longitude west from Washington. The most embarrassing part of their narration, however, is, that they say there was a canal of water of about three leagues in length from Capaha to the Great river. As the appellation

wilderness country, intersected in many places with streams, bayous, and lakes, many of which were not fordable, they described a large Indian village containing about four hundred dwellings. It was situated on the banks of a river, bordered as far as the eye could reach, with luxuriant fields of corn, and fruit trees of different kinds. This town was occupied by the tribe of Casqui or Casquin; and the river upon which it was situated in all probability was White River, about one hundred and fifty miles above its junction with the Mississippi. They remained at this place six days.... They then set out for the chief town or residence of the cacique, which was situated upon the same side of the river, about two days' march above the first town. In this distance they passed through a beautiful rolling country, which was less alluvial than any they had passed since they left the highlands east of the Tallahatchy. It was late in the month of May. Having remained nine or ten days.... De Soto set out toward the north and east.... After marching three days through open lands, "they came to a great swamp, rising on the borders, with a lake in the centre too deep to be forded, and which formed a kind of gulf on the Mississippi, into which it emptied itself."

Two days more brought them to some elevated ridges, beyond which they beheld the chief town of the Capahà tribe. This town, which contained five hundred houses, was situated on an elevated piece of land, nearly sur-
INTRODUCTION.

M'CULLOH.

Great river has been but just applied to the Mississippi, I was much perplexed to connect other circumstances with the supposition that Capahá was within three leagues of that river, and not being able to reconcile the future incidents of their route with such a position, I have presumed that the Spaniards have called the river of Casquin (Red river) the Great river in this instance, either from some mistaken idea of its identity with the Mississippi or from its being simply a large river, without any reference to the former. If we admit this misnomer to have existed, there remains no other difficulty to overcome; for the ensuing part of their journey agrees with supposing Capahá to have been on Red river.

At Capahá the Indians informed Soto, that at about forty leagues distant were mountains (Ozark mountains, or Potato hills), at which he could procure salt; and two Spaniards who were despatched for this purpose, returned after an absence of eleven days with a sufficiency of rock salt, "as clear as crystal", and one load of copper. (Herrera, v, 339.)

[According to Herrera, this distance is but four leagues, if correctly translated; but in Garcilazo it is as stated in our text. That we are correct in following the latter, is justified by the number of days consumed in the journey. They had probably reached the vicinity of the hot springs of the Washita, near which Major Long's party (Expedition to Rocky Mountains, ii, 299) found native copper. In the same region also

MONETTE.

rounded by a deep bayou which communicated with the Mississippi or "Rio Grande", nine miles distant from the town. . . . The town of Capahá in all probability was situated a few miles south of the present town of Helena in Arkansas, upon the west bank of the Mississippi. The changes in the river channel since that time may have obliterated the ancient landmarks, and have thrown the river several miles further west at this particular point. The numerous old river lakes on the east side of the river are facts which corroborate the inference. The low grounds west of the Mississippi which were traversed by De Soto in this portion of his marches, correspond well with the present region of the White River delta, and its tributary Big Creek. In further confirmation of the inference that De Soto crossed the Mississippi near this point, the reader is referred to the present geography of the country in the vicinity of Helena, which will abundantly satisfy him of its correctness. Helena is on the west side of the river, ten miles by the river below the mouth of the St. Francis river, and twenty miles above the "Horse-shoe Bend", or eighty miles above the mouth of White River. It is situated on alluvial ground, which descends gently back to a low, boggy, cypress bayou, which meanders within a few rods of the town, and near the base of the uplands, which rise fifty or sixty feet above the alluvion. This bayou takes its origin from an old river-lake near the Bluffs, a few miles above Helena, and
INTRODUCTION.

M'CULLOH.
is the saline branch of the Wa-shita, near which they probably procured salt.—Note.]  

Afterwards, Soto returned to Casquin, determining to march to the westward, and after crossing the river (Red river) he marched down the stream four or five days, through a fertile country, to Quiguuate, a province and town with the same name, fertile and abundant in provisions. I cannot detect this name on the map. Lest any of my readers might suppose I had overlooked the apparent resemblance of Coshatta in this very neighbourhood to Quiguuate, it may be proper to remark, that the Coshattas are a body of Creek Indians who emigrated to that village about thirty or forty years ago. From Quiguuate they marched in five days to Colima, still descending the river, which Garcilazo (Exped. of Soto, ii, 172) expressly says, ran by Casquin, and which confirms our supposition that Capaha was on Red river; for such a descent along the river side will alone suit that stream. Colima, or Coligoa (for it is spelt both ways) I cannot identify in any Indian name; but the Portuguese gentleman says, they marched seven days from Quiguuate under guidance of an Indian, through a marshy country and so wet that they even slept in the water until they came to Coligoa, which lay at the foot of a mountain, and upon a river as large as the Coya in Estreladura. This description will apply tolerably well to that hill called Mount Darby, about 32° north latitude, and by which Sibley's river passes.

MONETTE.
winds on about fifteen miles below the town, where it unites with the river at "Horse-shoe Bend". Upon this bayou, which is called "Old-town Bayou", about eight miles below Helena, are found the remains of a large Indian town. These remains consist of mounds, embankments, and bricks, of antique appearance and form. They are doubtless the remains of the old Indian town Capahâ. The striking resemblance in the general features of the country about the Arkansas, White River, and the St. Francis, compared with that on Red River, the Washita, and the River au Bœuf, or the Tensas, as regards the general description of rivers, swamps, and high rolling lands, has been the cause of much doubt and uncertainty among those who have attempted to trace the route of the Spanish army. Some have supposed that their first sojourning and marches west of the Mississippi were principally in the vicinity of New Madrid; some that it was near the Arkansas; and others that it must have been as low down as Red River. This latter opinion is maintained by Judge Martin in his History of Louisiana. In this he is most probably in error. While in the territory of Capahâ, De Soto having heard of a region to the north, where salt abounded, and where probably gold might be found, sent two Spaniards with Indian guides to ascertain the prospects. After eleven days they returned, having been about one hundred leagues north-west, through a barren and hilly region, abounding in buffaloes. They brought a supply of rock salt and some
INTRODUCTION.

M'CULLOH.

From Coligoa, after five days' march, they arrived at Palisema; but they do not state in what direction they went. As they say, however, the face of the country was rough, we may presume they had left Red river, and marched westwardly across the hills between Red and Sabine rivers, and from thence they advanced to Tafalocaya, in the province of Cayas,—the Keyes Indians, who live on the east bank of Trinity river at present, but formerly resided on the head waters of the Sabine. Thence they marched to Tanico (Tankaways?), [The Tankaways have no particular place of abode, but are always moving, alternately occupying the country watered by the Trinity, Brassos de Dios, and Colorado rivers.—Note.] on a river side (Brassos de Dios), and then in a day and a half more reached Tula. From this town they marched in six days to Vitanque or Autiamque, where they passed the winter of 1541. At this place they say it snowed heavily.

I have not been able to identify any points on their march, or even its general direction after leaving Coligoa; but incline, from their future movements, to suppose that they had ascended the river Brassos de Dios some distance up the valley, through which that stream descends from mountains of St. Saba. I think we may be justified in supposing this to have been their route, as the Portuguese gentleman says, that, in marching from Tula to Autiamque, they were ‘five days passing over very rough mountains’, which can hardly be applied to any other mountains than those of St. Saba.

MONEETTE.

copper, but found no gold. Dis-couraged by this intelligence, De Soto determined to bear more toward the west. He finally returned to the village of Casqui, probably on White River, and thence, after a few days rest, they advanced down the river, marching through a fertile and populous country for several days, or about one hundred miles, to the principal town of Quigate, where he arrived on the 4th of August.

This town must have been on White River, about forty or fifty miles above its mouth.

Mr. Irving says: “From Quigate De Soto shaped his course to the northwest in search of a province called Coligoa, lying at the foot of mountains, beyond which he thought there might be a gold region. After a march of several days through dreary forests and frequent marshes, they came to the village of Coligoa on the margin of a small river.” This must have been the Big Meto Creek, about fifty miles south-east of Little Rock.

At Coligoa De Soto learned that the country to the north was thinly inhabited by Indians, but that vast herds of buffaloes ranged the country, and that toward the south there was a populous and fertile country called Cayas. Toward this country his march was next directed. After nine days’ march, having passed a large river, he came to a village called Tanico, in the Cayas country. Here he found salt springs. . . . He was now probably on the head waters of Saline River, a branch of the Washita.

From Tanico their march was next directed westward, and after several days’ march through a
McCulloh.

The Portuguese gentleman also says, that the river of Cayas (Red river?) passed by Autiamque, which, to make a position, we shall assume to have been situated on Red river, about the 20° of longitude west from Washington. Autiamque, or Utiangue, it is not unlikely is a corruption of the Yancon Sioux word O-tong-y-a, which signifies a village.

While in winter quarters, they made an excursion in quest of slaves into the province of Naguanen or Naguatex (Nacodoche Indians?), which they describe as being very populous.

In the spring of the year 1542, they left Autiamque to return to the great river (Mississippi); for Soto became anxious to make an establishment on its banks, by which he could communicate with the sea. To reach that river they made hasty and long marches by a different route from the one by which they had advanced, but of which scarcely any particulars are stated.

The Portuguese Gentleman relates, that after leaving Autiamque, they proceeded to the province of Ayas (Yawyes or Eyeish Indians), where they found a town upon that river (Red river) which passes by Cayas and Autiamque. To cross the river they had to build a boat, and after three or four days' marching in a very wet country, they came to the town of Tultelpina, where there was a river and a lake which discharged itself impetuously into the river. This is precisely the character of the numerous lakes along the course of Red River. We have no clue given us, to ascertain whether they had got to the wilderness country they reached the chief town of the Tula tribe, situated between two streams, probably the Upper Ouachita and Little Missouri... They were obliged to remain here twenty days... Having heard of the country of Autiamque or Utiangue toward the north or northwest, the march was next thither. The distance was about two hundred and thirty or forty miles by the route marched over, "five days of their journey was over a rough, mountainous country, closely wooded." At length they reached the chief town of Utiangue... The town "contained numerous well-built houses, and was situated in a fine plain, watered by a wide running river, the same that passed through the province of Cayas." This "wide running river" was doubtless the Arkansas, the same river crossed by them in their march southward three months before, and the portion of the river upon which this village was situated most likely was not more than fifty miles below Crawford courthouse, in the state of Arkansas... The winter had already set in with great severity.

The expedition was now on the north side of the Arkansas river, not far from the western boundary of the present State of Arkansas, in latitude about 36° north... De Soto determined to take up his winter quarters... (A.D. 1542). As soon... as the winter was sufficiently over, he broke up his winter quarters at Utiangue, and marched toward the Mississippi. After several days' march along the river on the south side, they halted ten...
INTRODUCTION.

McCulloch.

entangled between some of the numerous lakes that discharge themselves into Red river, or whether it may not have been some lake on the Wachita river. But they crossed the lake with considerable difficulty on rafts and floats, and then marched in three days' time to Tianto, a frontier town of the province of Nilco or Anilco. Herrera, vi, 5, says, from hence they marched thirty leagues through that province to the chief village of the cacique, which stood upon the bank of a river as large as that of Seville. They crossed this river, and marching through a woody desert came into the province of Guachoya, and then to the capital thereof, seated on the hillocks by the side of the Great river.

Of the places last mentioned, Tianto and the river of Nilco, we can find nothing synonymous in the Indian names as laid down in our maps; but taking everything into consideration, both as respects the past events of their journey, and those that presently are to be related, I presume the river of Nilco was the Arkansaw. The Portuguese Gentleman indeed says that it was the same river that ran by Cayas and Autiamque, which we have hitherto considered to have been Red river, and with which Nilco would agree as well as with the Arkansaw, was not the supposition opposed by the length of their voyage down the Mississippi to the ocean. Now, as I think, it will be impossible to reconcile their voyage down that river, with a position near the mouth of Red river, it will follow conclusively, that they debarked above the Arkansaw, for it is impossible days at an Indian town until they built boats and crossed the whole army over to the north or east side. This probably he did to reach the Mississippi, near the point where he had left it. Their advance thence was "through a low region and perplexed with swamps"... At length, after several days' march, they came to the village of Anilco, situated on "the same river that passed through the provinces of Cayas and Utiangue". There learning that there was a populous and fertile country not far below the junction of these two great rivers, he determined to proceed toward it, in hopes the sea might be at no great distance. He accordingly crossed the river at Anilco to the south side, and after a march of four days over a hilly uninhabited country, arrived at the village of Guachoya, on the Mississippi, about twenty miles below the mouth of the Arkansas. It was situated on two hills, one or two hundred yards from the river, and contained about three hundred houses. ... De Soto ... sent an exploring party down the river to seek tidings of the sea; but after eight days' absence, they returned, having advanced only forty-five miles, "on account of the great windings of the river, and the swamps and torrents with which it was bordered". Thus it seems the river was full, and many sluices were putting out into the swamps and filling the bayous. It was now about the last of May 1542. (Death of De Soto.) He expired ... about the 6th of June. Luis de Moscoso having succeeded to the
that any other river can divide
the question of locality with
the two we have mentioned.

Garcilazo (Exped. of Soto, ii,
221) says, that Guachoya was
situated seven leagues from the
mouth of Nilco river. That it
was above, or north of this river,
is evident from Herrera, vi, 7,
who describes the canoes of a
military expedition to have "went
down" the great river (Missis-
sippi), and up Nilco river, to the
town of that name, a distance in
all of about twenty leagues.

At Guachoya, Soto, the com-
mander of these villainous band-
ditti, died, and his body was sunk
in the Mississippi, where they
say the water was nineteen fa-
thoms deep—if Herrera's Spanish
measures be translated correctly,
which I very much doubt. I pre-
sume the Spanish word used by
Herrera, is vará, which is but
thirty-three inches of our mea-
sure.

After Soto's death, his fol-
lowers made a fruitless attempt
to march to Mexico by land. They assert, they went about one
hundred and fifty leagues to the
westward, and got in sight of
vast mountains, but from the de-
sert state of the country, and its
unpromising appearance, they
again returned to the Great river.
Here they commenced building
their brigantines, in the province
of Aminoya or Minoya, which
they state was about seventeen
leagues above Guachoya.

We have no means whereby
we can ascertain how far west
they marched on this expedition.
The mountains they mention may
have been some of the spurs of
the Rocky mountains, though we
can hardly think they had reached
command of the remnant of De
Soto's army... abandoned the
plan of De Soto of descending
the river to the sea, and deter-
mained to reach Mexico by land.
The expedition accordingly set
out for the west about the mid-
dle of June. They passed near
the salines of the Wachita river.
... Leaving this region, they
passed through the country of
the Naguatax, now written Nat-
chitoches, and which appears to
have been high up Red river, in
the south-west corner of the
State of Arkansas. At length,
after nearly three months, they
came upon Red river, in the
barrens north of the present
country of Texas.... Continuing
the march south of De Soto's
route, they passed through a
country abounding in buffaloes;
beyond which, they passed a
sterile region, and came in sight
of mountains, where the country
was almost uninhabited. Here
they halted, and sent light ex-
ploring parties, who penetrated
in every direction nearly ninety
miles further, and returned with
information that the country
grew worse as they advanced.
In this region the natives lived
in camps.... These were evi-
dently the early ancestors of the
Pawnees, Camanches, and other
roving tribes of the west. It
was now late in October, and
they had been nearly five months
making their way across from
the Mississipi, and had traver-
sed regions which are un-
known.... It was determined
at length to return, and retrace
their steps to the Mississippi.
... They returned by forced
marches.... Before they reached
the vicinity of the Arkansas,...
that chain. Minoya, or Aminoya, I have been unable to detect in any Indian name in this part of America. There was an Indian nation called Tamaoaas, a little above where we have located Aminoya, and it is not impossible the Spaniards may have corrupted that appellation. The Tamaoaas, who were of the Illinois stock, lived in the time of the Chevalier Tonti (A.D. 1679), about one hundred and forty years after Soto, on the Mississippi, about ten leagues below the mouth of the Missouri river. This will place them pretty close to where we have supposed Aminoya to have been. (Tonti in Trans. N. Y. Hist. Soc. ii, 264.) At any rate, Aminoya was, according to Herrera, seventeen leagues above Guachoya. The Portuguese gentleman says, they were two days march distant. That a plausible locality may be assigned for this place, we have ventured to select the neighbourhood of the town of Helena, about thirty-five miles above the mouth of the Arkansas river.

At Aminoya, they built seven brigantines; and having embarked, they descended the Mississippi to the ocean.

The only method by which we can plausibly determine, whether Aminoya was near the mouth of the Arkansas, or Red river, will be to ascertain, as near as possible, the number of days they were actually employed in descending the Mississippi. For as we know the velocity of the current, we may ascertain with tolerable exactness the number of miles per day they would be carried down by the mere force of the stream, and thus learn the
minimum distance they would descend in any certain number of days. We should then, if it be possible, add to the simple force of the stream, an additional velocity from the use of oars and sails; but for this we can have no data, though we must bear the fact in mind.

The Portuguese gentleman says, the voyage lasted seventeen days, and he estimates its length to have been about two hundred and fifty leagues.

Garcilaso relates, the voyage continued during nineteen days and twenty nights, and that they sailed during that time about five hundred leagues.

As the number of leagues stated in either relation was avowedly guess work, no reliance need be given them; and the difference in the number of days may be explained, by considering the Portuguese not to have counted the three days that they stopped to refresh themselves a little above the mouth of the Mississippi before they went to sea, while Garcilazo counts the time to the very ocean. We shall, however, take the account of the Portuguese gentleman, and after ascertaining, as carefully as we can, all the various delays and stoppages that occurred during the voyage, then make a fair estimate of the time during which they actually made progress.

They left Aminoya, 2 July, A.D. 1543, but according to the new style to which this time must be reduced, on the 14th July; and descended as far as Guachoya, where they stopped several hours, but did not land: suppose the detention was
narration.
The next day they landed at a wood, but at night they went aboard their vessels: probable stoppage...12
They once more landed at a town, where a party of horse were put on shore, who plundered a village: say...12
They moreover tarried here a day to embark their plunder...24
After this they embarked and fell down the stream to a town on the river side, where they landed and burnt the village...Their whole force (about 300 men) appear to have been landed and drawn up in battle array: we suppose the detention was...24
The next detention appears to have been from a battle on the river with the Indians, during which time they were either at anchor or made very little progress: say...6
They now speak of frequent detentions they had experienced on account of the boats that carried their horses; and to avoid this delay for the future, they landed and killed them, intending to dry their flesh for provisions; but the Indians making a formidable attack at this time, the Spaniards fled to the brigantines. We suppose the whole of the detentions they complain of, as well as this particular landing, may be...48
After this time, no other circumstances are related whereby we could estimate any other detention.
M‘CULLOH.

According to our estimate, they were delayed on their voyage five days and a half; which, however, we think may be safely called six entire days; which, deducted from seventeen, leaves eleven days for the actual voyage.

The current of the Mississippi at this time of the year (July) may be stated at about three miles per hour.

Having thus settled our data, we now proceed to observe, that if Aminoya had been at the mouth of Red river, their voyage thence to the ocean would have been about three hundred and fifty miles, which for eleven days' progress will average but about thirty-two miles per day, or about one and a quarter miles per hour under the united impetus of sails, oars, and the steady current of the Mississippi. As we have every reason to think a log would be floated down with twice the velocity, it seems to follow conclusively, that Aminoya could not have been at the mouth of Red river.

The Arkansaw falls into the Mississippi about seven hundred and twenty miles above its mouth, which will allow them to have descended the stream at the rate of sixty-five miles a day, or about two and three-quarter miles per hour during the twenty-four hours, which is about a fair allowance, as they did not continue under way during the whole night, except at particular times.

They also used their oars on certain occasions with all the strength they could apply to them, and their sails, when the wind served; but we know not how to estimate the additional velocity thus acquired. It probably, dur-
ing their voyage, would not compensate for the time they lost, by stopping for five or six hours during the nights they were on the river, when not pursued by the Indians in their canoes.

But if it be still thought that they ought to have descended the Mississippi at a greater rate than sixty-five miles per day, we can only support our conjecture by this supposition, that they either stopped, or were detained a longer time than we have allowed, or that they have omitted other delays in the descriptions they have given us. But, ceteris paribus, the difficulty will be two-fold, to reconcile their voyage to have been from Red river; and thus being negatively established, it will follow, that Aminoya must have been just above the Arkansaw; for I think it impossible that any other river can be brought within the bounds of their expedition on the land.

Since writing the above, I feel satisfied, from the following authority, that their actual progress down the Mississippi, according to our estimate, confirms the position of Aminoya to have been above the Arkansaw:—"The general current of the Mississippi (Stoddart, Sketches of Louisiana, 371) is from three and a half to four miles an hour. In low water, a boat will float down at the rate of from forty-five to fifty miles in twenty-four hours; in high water, from ninety to a hundred; and at a mean height, from sixty to seventy miles. Between the Arkansaw and the Delta, the velocity of the current is 1-3rd less; and from the Delta to the outlet, by nearly one-half."
From these accounts, drawn up by two of the most pains-taking investigators of the subject, it will be seen how difficult it is to trace, with any appearance of precision, the route of the expedition west of the Mississippi; but there can be no doubt that the Spaniards must have penetrated to a considerable distance into the interior.

The character of De Soto, as developed in his position of leader of this remarkable expedition, presents us with an amount of hardihood and courageous perseverance under the most fearful trials, unsurpassed perhaps even by Pizarro or Cortes. At the same time we have to deplore, that in his case, as in that of most of the adventurers of the period, his daring was equalled by his cruelty. The couplet of Gay, which is verified we should hope in the majority of instances, that—

Cowards are cruel, but the brave
Love mercy and delight to save—

seems here to receive a complete disapproval.

Upon the reckless inhumanity of De Soto, and of Moscoso his successor, Bartolome de las Casas, the celebrated "Protector of the Indians", writes in the following emphatic language:—"The fourth tyrant [s. e., Soto] that came last in the yere 1538, cunningly advised, and being fully furnished: it is three yeeres since there is no tidinges concerning him. Wee are certaine that incontinent [immediately] after his entrie thither, hee hath behaved himself cruelly, and since hath beene as a man vanished: that if he be alive, hee and his mainies have
destroyed these three yeeres a great many mightie peoples, if hee hath found any in his enquest as hee hath gone;—for sure he is one of the notoriousest and best experimented amongst them that have done the most hurtes, mischieves and destructions in many realmes with their consorts (“porq’ es de los marcados y experimentados, & de los que mas daños y males y destruc- ciones de muchas provincias y reynos con otros sus com- pañeros a hecho”): wherefore I beleeve that God hath given him like end unto the others.”

“Three or foure yeeres after the writing of the above written, there came out of the Florida the head of the petet tyrants [i.e., Moscoso] which went thither with this captaine tyrant (“tirano mayor”) that there left his bones, of whome wee understood the cruelties and evilles whiche there during his life-time principially, and under his conduct and government, and since after his cursed death, the unnaturall men have executed against the Indians innocent, and harmefull to none, to verifie that which I had prognosticate before, they being so excessive, that they have the more confirmed the rule by mee set downe before at the beginning, that the farther they proceeded to discover, destroy and to waste countries and lands, the more cruelties and notorious wickednesses they woulde doe against God, and against their neighbours. It loatheth mee to recount those actes so cursed, ghastly and bloodie,—not of men but of savage beastes,” etc. etc. (The Spanish Colonie, or briefe chronicle of the acts and gestes of the Spaniardes in the West-Indies—[translated from the Brevissima
relación de la destrucción de las Indias, 1552]. 4to., London; 1583.)

The editor, in conclusion, has to acknowledge his obligations to Richard Henry Major, Esq., the zealous and able Secretary of the Hakluyt Society, for much assistance kindly and voluntarily rendered, particularly in that the most difficult part of his task—the route of the Spaniards.
THE
WORTHYE
AND FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE TRAVAILES,
Discovery, & Conquest, of that great
Continent of Terra Florida, being liuely
Paraleld, with that of our now Inhabited VIRGINIA.

As also
The Comodities of the said Country,
With diuers excellent and rich Mynes, of Golde,
Siluer, and other Mettals, &c. which cannot but
giue vs a great and exceeding hope of our
VIRGINIA, being so neere
of one Continent.

Accomplished and effected, by that worthy
Generall and Captaine, Don Ferdinando
de Soto, and six hundreth Spaniards
his followers.

LONDON
Printed for Mathew Lownes, dwelling
in Paules Church-yard, at the Signe of
the Bishops head. 1611.
THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE, THE RIGHT
Worshipfull Counsellors, and others the cheerfull
adventurors, for the advancement of that Christian
and noble Plantation in Virginia.

THIS worke, right honourable, right worshipfull, and the
rest, though small in shew yet great in substance, doth yeeld
much light to our enterprise now on foot; whether you desire
to know the present and future commodities of our countrie;
or the qualities and conditions of the inhabitants, or what
course is best to be taken with them.

Touching the commodities, besides the generall report of
Cabeça de Vaca to Charles the Emperour (who first travelled
through a great part of the Inland of Florida, next adjoining
upon our Virginia) That Florida was the richest countrie of
the world; and, that after hee had found clothes made of
cotton wooll, he saw gold and silver, and stones of great
value: I referre you first to the rich mines of gold reported
Chap. 35. to be in the province of Yupaha, and described in the twelfth
chapter of this Treateise to come within our imits. And
againe, to the copper hatchets found in Cutisachiqui, standing
upon the River of Santa Helena, which were said to have a
mixture of gold. It seemeth also that the last chronicler of

1 See also chap. ii.
THE EPISTLE

the West Indies, Antonio de Herrera, speaking of the foresaid River of Santa Helena, which standeth in 32 degrees and an halfe, alludeth to the province of Yupaha, in these words:

Yel oro, y plata, que hallaron, no era de aquella tierra, sino de 60 leguas, a dentro al norte, de los pueblos dichos Otapales y Olagatanos, adonde se intiende, que ay minas de oro, plata, y cobre. That is to say, that the gold and silver which they found, was not of that countrie (of Santa Helena), but 60 leagues distant towards the north, of the townes called Otapales and Olagatanos, where we understand that there are mines of gold, silver, and copper. By which reckoning these rich mines are in the latitude of 35 degrees and an halfe. I desire you likewise to take knowledge of the famous golden province of Chisca, stretching further to the north, whereof the cacique of Coste gave notice to Ferdinando de Soto, in the towne of Chiaha, affirming, that there were mines of copper, and of another mettall of the same colour, save that it was finer, and of a farre more perfect lustre, and farre better in sight, and that they used it not so much, because it was softer. And the selfe same thing was before told the governour in Cutifachiqui: who sent two Christians from Chiaha, with certaine Indians which knew the countrie of Chisca, and the language thereof, to view it, and to make report of that which they should finde. We likewise reade not long after, that the governour set forward to seeke a province called Pacaha, which hee was informed to be neere unto Chisca, where the Indians told him that there was gold.

And in another place hee saith: That from Pacaha hee sent thirtie horsemen and fiftie footmen to the province of Caluça, to see if from thence he might travell to Chisca, where the Indians said, there was a worke of gold and copper. So that here is foure times mention, and that in sundrie places, of the rich and famous golde mines of Chisca, and that they lie beyond the mountaines towards the north, over which they were not able to travell for the roughness thereof. But what
neede I to stand upon forren testimonies, since Master Thomas Heriot, a man of much judgement in these causes, signified unto you all, at your late solemn meeting at the house of the right honourable the Earle of Exeter, how to the southwest of our old fort in Virginia, the Indians often informed him, that there was a great melting of red mettall, reporting the manner in working of the same. Besides, our owne Indians

1 Thomas Hariot, or Harriot, the eminent mathematician and astronomer; born 1560, died 1621. He was mathematical tutor to Sir Walter Raleigh; and in 1585 accompanied the first party of colonists to Virginia. Here he was "employed in the discovery and surveying thereof, and in making what knowledge he could of the commodities it yielded, and concerning the inhabitants, and their manners and customs." Three years later, he published the result of his labours in a small quarto volume, bearing the following title: "A briefe and true Report of the new found land of Virginia . . . discovered by the English colony there seated by Sir Richard Greinuile, knight, in the yeere 1585, which remained under the government of Rafe Lane, Esquier, one of her maiesties equieres, during the space of twelve monethes, at the speciall charge and direction of the Honourable Sir Walter Raleigh. By Thomas Hariot, servant to the above named Sir Walter, a member of the colony, and there imploied in discovering." This account was republished in 1590, in folio, by the celebrated Frankfort engraver, Theodor de Bry, who added, as he says in his Dedication to Sir Walter, "figures, ctt in copper, which doe leuely represent the forme and manner of the inhabitants of the same countrye, with theirs ceremonies, sollemne feastes, and the manner and situation of their townes or villages." Hakluyt, it seems, was the first to encourage him to publish the work, and he also supplied him with the descriptions to accompany his plates. In his preface to the "gentle reader", De Bry says: "consideringe therefore that yt was a thinge worthie of admiration, I was verye willinge to offer vnto you the true pictures of those people with the helf of Maister Richard Hakluyt of Oxford, minister of God's word, who first encouraged me to publish the worke, I creaued out of the verye original of Maister Jhon White, an Englishch paynter, who was sent into the contrye by the queenes maieste, onlye to draw the description of the place, lyuelye to describe the shapes of the inhabitaunts, their apparell, manners of liuinge and fashions, att the speciall charges of the worthy knight Sir Walter Raleigh, who bestowed no small sume of monnys in the serche and discouerey of that contrye from te yeares 1584 to the ende of the years 1588."

2 Thomas Cecil, second Lord Burleigh, created Earl of Exeter in 1605; died in 1622.
have lately revealed either this or another rich mine of copper or gold, in a towne called Ritanoe, neere certaine mountaines lying west of Roanoac.

Another very gainfull commoditie is, the huge quantitie of excellent perles, and little babies and birds made of them, that were found in Cutisachiqui. The abundance whereof is reported to be such, that if they would have searched divers graves in townes thereabout, they might have laded many of their horses. Neither are the Turkie stones and cotton wooll found at Guasco to be forgotten, nor passed over in silence.

But that, which I make no small account of, is, the multitude of oxen, which, from the beginning of the 16 to the end of the 26 chapter, are nine several times made mention of; and that along from Chiaha, Coste, Pacaha, Coligoa, and Tulla, still toward the north, to wit, toward us, there was such store of them, that they could keepe no corne for them; and that the Indians lived upon their flesh. The haire of these oxen is likewise said to be like a soft wooll, betweene the coarse and fine wooll of sheepe; and that they use them for coverlets, because they are very soft and woolled like sheep; and not so onely, but they make bootes, shoes, targets, and other things necessarie of the same. Besides the former benefits, their young ones may be framed to the yoke, for carting and tillage of our ground. And I am in good hope, that ere it be long we shall have notice of their being neerer us, by that which I reade in the Italian relation of Cabeça de Vaca, the first finder of them; which writeth, That they spread themselves within the countrye above four hundred leagues. Moreover, Vasques de Coronado, and long after him, Antonio de Espejo (whose voyages are at large in my third volume), travelled many leagues among these heardes of

---

1 See chap. xxxiv and xxxv.
2 See Ramusio Navigationi, tom. iii.
3 The titles of the works referred to by Hakluyt are as follows:—1. “The Relation of Francis Vasquez de Coronado, captaine generall of the people
oxen, and found them from 33 degrees ranging very farre to
the north and northeast.

A fourth chiefe commoditie wee may account to be the
great number of mulberrie trees, apt to feede silke-wormes to
make silke: whereof there was such plentie in many places,
that, though they found some hempe in the countrie, the
Spaniards made ropes of the barks of them for their brigan-
dines, when they were to put to sea for Nova Hispania.¹

A fifth is the excellent and perfect colours, as black, white,
greene, yellow, and red, and the materials to dye withall, so
often spoken of in this discourse: among which, I have some
hope to bring you to the knowledge of the rich graine of
Cochonillo, so much esteemed, and of so great price. I speake
nothing of the severall sorts of passing good grapes for wine
and raisons.

Neither is it the least benefit, that they found salt made by Chap. 31 & 32
the Indians at Cayas, and in two places of the province of
Aguacay: the manner also how the inhabitants make it, is
very well worth the observation.

One of the chiefest of all the rest may be the notice of the Chap. 31 & 32
South Sea, leading us to Japan and China, which I finde

which were sent in the name of the emperours majestie to the countray
of Cibola, newly discovered, which he sent to Don Antonio de Mendoza,
viceroy of Mexico, of such things as happened in his voyage from the 22 of
Aprill in the yeere 1540, which departed from Culiacan forward; and of such
things as hee found in the country which he passed.” (Vol. iii, p. 373.)
2. “A briefe relation of two notable voyages; the first, made by frier
Augustin Ruys, a Franciscan, in the yeere 1581; the second by Antonio
de Espejo in the yeere 1583; who, together with his company, discovered
a land wherein they found fifteene provinces all full of townes, containing
houses of foure and five stories high, which they named New Mexico; for
that, in many respects, it resembleth the province of old Mexico.
This land is situate to the north of Nueva Espanna, and stretcheth from
24 to 34 degrees and better; by the which, and by other inhabited lands,
it is thought that men may travell even to Terra de Labrador. Taken
out of the history of China, written by Frier Juan Gonzalez de Mendoça,
and printed in Madrid, 1586.” (Vol. iii, p. 383.)

¹ New Spain or Mexico.
here twice to be spoken of. Whereof long since I have written a discourse, which I thinke not fit to be made over common.

For closing up this point, the distances of places, the qualities of the soiles, the situations of the regions, the diversities and goodnesse of the fruits, the severall sorts of beasts, the varietie of fowles, the difference betwenee the inhabitants of the mountaines and the plaines, and the riches of the inland in comparison of the sea-coast, are judiciously set downe in the conclusion of this booke, whereunto for mine owne ease I referre you.

To come to the second generall head, which in the beginning I proposed, concerning the manners and dispositions of the inhabitants; among other things, I finde them here noted to be very eloquent and well spoken, as the short orations, interpreted by John Ortiz, which lived twelve yeares among them, make sufficient prooufe. And the author, which was a gentleman of Eluas, in Portugal, employed in all the action, whose name is not set downe, speaking of the cacique of Tulla, saith, that as well this cacique, as the others, and all those which came to the Governour on their behalfe, delivered their message or speech in so good order, that no oratour could utter the same more eloquently. But for all their faire and cunning speeches, they are not overmuch to be trusted, for they be the greatest traitors of the world, as their manifold most craftie contrived and bloody treasons, here set down at large, doe evidently prove. They be also as unconstant as the wethercock, and most readie to take all occasions of advantages to doe mischiefe. They are great liars and dissemblers; for which faults oftentimes they had their deserved payments. And many times they gave good testomone of their great valoure and resolution. To handle them gently, while gentle courses may be found to serve, it will be without comparison the best; but if gentle polishing will not serve, then we shall not want hammerours and rough masons
enow, I meane our old soldiours trained up in the Nether-
lands, to square and prepare them to our Preachers hands.
To conclude, I trust by your Honours and Worships wise
instructions to the noble governour, the worthy experimented
Lieutenant and Admirall, and other chiefe managers of the
businesse, all things shall be so prudently carried, that the
painfull Preachers shall be reverenced and cherished, the
valiant and forward soldiour respected, the diligent rewarded,
the coward emboldened, the weake and sick relieved, the
mutinous suppressed, the reputation of the Christians among
the salvages preserved, our most holy faith exalted, all pagan-
isme and idolatrie by little and little utterly extinguished.
And here reposing and resting myselfe upon this sweete
hope, I cease, beseeching the Almighty to blesse this good
work in your hands to the honour and glorie of his most holy
name, to the inlargement of the dominions of his sacred
Majestie, and to the generall good of all the worthie adven-
turers and undertakers. From my lodging in the Colledge of
Westminster, this 15 of Aprill, 1609.

By one publicly and anciently devoted to God's
service, and all yours in this so good action,

RICHARD HAKLUYT.
A RELATION OF SUCH THINGS AS DON FER-
dinando de Soto, the Adelantado of Florida, passed in
seeking to conquer the said countrey, wherein is declared
who he was, and what some of them were that went with
him: and some particulars and diversities of the
countrie, and whatsoever they saw and
happened unto them in the same.

CHAPTER I.

Which declareth who Don Ferdinando de Soto was, and how he got the
government of Florida.

CAPTaine SOTO was the son of a squire of Xerez of Badajos. He went into the Spanish Indies, when Peter Arias of Avila
was governor of the West Indies. And there he was without
any thing else of his owne, save his sword and target: and
for his good qualities and valour, Peter Arias made him
captaine of a troope of horsemen, and by his commandement
he went with Fernando Pizarro to the conquest of Peru;
where (as many persons of credit reported, which were there

1 The Portuguese form of this name is Souto.
2 Bartolomé de las Casas, Bishop of Chiapa, whose benevolent exertions
in behalf of the natives of America led to his being honoured with the
distinction of "Protector General of the Indians", gives a caustic ety-
ology of the title of Adelantado, so often granted to the Spanish dis-
coverers—"Adelantados porque se adelantaron en hazer males y daños
tan gravisimos á gentes pacíficas."—Prescott, Conq. of Mexico, i, 213.
3 Or Pedarias Davila, by which name he is better known. He was
sent by King Ferdinand to supersede Balboa, the discoverer of the
Pacific, in the government of Darien. This great man at length fell a
victim to the jealousy and implacable enmity of the cruel Pedrarias, by
whose orders he was put to death in 1517.—Herrera, dec. ii, lib. ii.
present), as well at the taking of Atabalipa, Lord of Peru, as at the assault of the citie of Cusco, and in all other places where they found resistance, wheresoever hee was present, hee passed all other captaines and principall persons.¹ For which cause, besides his part of the treasure of Atabalipa, he had a good share; whereby in time he gathered an hundred and fourescore thousand duckets together, with that which fell to his part, which he brought into Spaine; whereof the Emperour borrowed a certaine part, which he repaied againe with 60,000 rials of plate in the rent of the silkes of Granada, and all the rest was delivered him in the contractation house of Sivil.² He tooke servants, to wit, a steward, a gentleman usher, pages, a gentleman of the horse, a chamberlaine, lacies, and al other officers that the house of a nobleman requireth. From Sivil hee went to the court, and in the court there accompanied him John Danusco of Sivil,³ and Lewis Moscoso d'Alvarado, Nunno de Touar, and John Rodriguez Lobillo. Except John Danusco, all the rest came with him from Peru: and every one of them brought fourteene or fifteene thousand duckets; all of them went well and costly apparrelled. And although Soto of his owne nature was not liberall, yet because that was the first time that hee was to shew himselfe in the court, he spent frankly, and went accompanied with those which I have named, and with his servants, and many other which resorted unto him. Hee married with Donna Isabella de Boyadilla, daughter of Peter Arias Avila, Earle of Punno en Rostro. The Emperour made him the Governor of the Isle of Cuba, and Adelantado or President of Florida, with a title of Marques of certaine part of the lands that he should conquer.

¹ The reader is referred to Mr. Prescott's delightful work, "The history of the Conquest of Peru", for a particular account of Soto's Peruvian exploits.
² The Casa de Contratacion, "House of Trade", or India House, establisshed at Seville in 1503.
³ Juan de Añasco.
CHAPTER II.

How Cabeça de Vaca came to the court and gave relation of the countrie of Florida: and of the companie that was assembled in Sivil to goe with Don Ferdinando de Soto.

When Don Ferdinando had obtained the government, there came a gentleman from the Indies to the court, named Cabeça de Vaca,¹ which had been with the governor Pamphilo de Narvaez, which died in Florida, who reported that Narvaez was cast away at sea, with all the companie that went with him. And how he with four more escaped and arrived in Nueva Espanna;² and he brought a relation in writing of that which hee had scene in Florida, which said in some places: In such a place I have scene this; and the rest which here I saw, I leave to conferre of betweene his Maiestie and myselfe. Generally he reported the miserie of the countrie, and the troubles which hee passed: and he told some of his kinsfolke, which were desirous to goe into the Indies, and urged him very much to tell them whether he had seen any rich country in Florida, that he might not tell them, because hee and another, whose name was Orantes³ (who remained in Nueva Espanna, with purpose to returne

¹ Alvar Nuñez Cabeça de Vaca was treasurer to the adventurous but ill-fated expedition into Florida, undertaken by Pamphilo de Narvaez in 1528. Of three hundred men who engaged in the enterprise, five only returned: their daring leader—the same Narvaez who eight years before had made a vain attempt to arrest Cortes in Mexico—perished in a storm near the mouths of the Mississippi. Cabeça de Vaca, one of the survivors, wrote a narrative of his ten years' wanderings and sufferings, which was published in 1555 under the title of "Naufragios de Alvar Nuñez de Cabeça de Vaca." "The story," says Bancroft, "of which the truth was affirmed on oath before a magistrate, is disfigured by bold exaggerations and the wildest fictions"; on the other hand M. Ternaux-Compans, and others, vindicate its credibility and general accuracy. An abridged English version, from the Italian in Ramusio's collection, is in Purchas, vol. iv, pp. 1499-1528.

² New Spain or Mexico.

³ Dorantes.
into Florida; for which intent hee came into Spaine to beg the government thereof of the emperour), had sworne not to discover some of those things which they had seene, because no man should prevent them in begging the same. And hee informed them, That it was the richest countrie of the world. Don Ferdinando de Soto was very desirous to have him with him, and made him a favourable offer: and after they were agreed, because Soto gave him not a summe of money which he demanded to buy a ship, they broke off againe. Baltasar de Gallegos, and Christopher de Spindola,¹ the kinsmen of Cabeça de Vaca, told him, that for that which hee had imparted to them, they were resolved to passe with Soto into Florida, and therefore they prayed him to advise them what they were best to doe. Cabeça de Vaca told them, that the cause why he went not with Soto was, because hee hoped to beg another government, and that hee was loth to go under the command of another; and that hee came to beg the conquest of Florida: but seeing Don Ferdinando de Soto had gotten it alreadie, for his othes sake hee might tell them nothing of that which they would know; but he counselled them to sell their goods and goe with him, and that in so doing they should doe well. As soone as he had opportunitie hee spake with the emperour, and related unto him whatsoever hee had passed and seene, and come to understand. Of this relation, made by word of mouth to the emperour, the Marques of Astorga² had notice, and forthwith determined to send with Don Ferdinando de Soto his brother Don Antonio Osorio; and with him two kinsmen of his prepared themselves, to wit, Francis Osorio, and Garcia Osorio. Don Antonio dispossessed himselfe of 60,000 rials of rent, which hee held by the Church; and Francis Osorio of a town of Vassals, which he had in the countrie de Campos. And they made their rendezvous with the Adelantado in Sivil.

¹ Spinola, a Genoese.
² Pedro Alvarez Osorio, fourth Marquis of Astorga.
like did Nunnez de Touar, and Lewis de Moscoso, and John Rodriguez Lobillo, each of whom had brought from Peru fourteene or fifteene thousand duckets. Lewis de Moscoso carried with him two brethren: there went also Don Carlos, which had married the Governour's niece, and tooke her with him. From Badajoz there went Peter Calderan, and three kinsmen of the Adelantado, to wit, Arias Tinoco, Alfonso Romo, and Diego Tinoco. And as Lewis de Moscoso passed through Elvas,\textsuperscript{*} Andrew de Vasconcelos spake with him, and requested him to speake to Don Ferdinand de Soto concerning him, and delivered him certaine warrants which he had received from the Marques of Villareal, wherein he gave him the captaineship of Ceuta in Barbarie, that he might shew them unto him. And the Adelantado saw them, and was informed who hee was, and wrote unto him, that hee would favour him in all things, and by al meanes, and would give him a charge of men in Florida. And from Elvas went Andrew de Vasconcelos, and Fernan Pegado, Antonio Martinez Segurado, Men Roiz Pereira, John Cordero, Stephen Pegado, Benedict Fernandez, and Alvaro Fernandez. And out of Salamanca, and Jaen, and Valencia, and Albuquerque, and from other partes of Spaine, many people of noble birth assembled at Sivil: insomuch that in Saint Lucar many men of good account which had sold their goods remained behind for want of shipping, wheras for other known and rich countries they are wont to want men; and this fell out by occasion of that which Cabeça de Vaca told the emperour, and informed such persons as hee had conference withall touching the state of that countrie. Soto made him great offers; and being agreed to goe with him (as I have said before), because he would not give him monie to pay for a ship, which he had bought, they broke off, and he went for Governour to the river of Plate. His kinsmen Christopher de Spindola, and Baltasar de Gallegos, went with Soto. Baltasar de Gallegos sold houses and vineyards, and rent corne, and ninetie rankes
of olive trees in the Xarafe of Sivil. Hee had the office of Alcalde Mayor, and tooke his wife with him. And there went also many other persons of account with the president, and had the offices following by great friendship, because they were offices desired of many; to wit, Antonio de Biedma was factor, John Danusco was auditor, and John Gaytan, nephew to the Cardinall of Ciguenza, had the office of treasurer.

CHAPTER III.

How the Portugales went to Sivil, and from thence to S. Lucar: he appointed captaines over the ships, and distributed the people which were to goe in them.

The Portugales departed from Elvas the 15 of Januarie, and came to Sivil the 19 of the same moneth, and went to

1 The olive districts in the vicinity of Seville. Aljarafe or Ajarafe, or more correctly Al-Sharaf, is an Arabic word, signifying a hilly or elevated country. Zuñiga (Annales de Sevilla, p. 4) describes it as “Aquella fertilissima porcion de tierra, que los antiguos llamaron Guerta de Hercules, que desde las riberas de Guadalquivir, interpuesta vega de media legua de ancho, se va elevando, de que le provino el nombre Alxarafe, que significa tierra alta dell superior.” Mr. Ford says, “This fertile district was called the garden of Hercules. It produced the finest Boetian olives of antiquity: under the Moors it was a paradise, but now all is ruin and desolation. There is not only excellent lodging for owls in ruined buildings, but first-rate cover for game of every kind, which thrive in these wastes, where nature and her feræ are left in undisputed possession.”—(Hand-Book of Spain, i, 241.)

2 Among the Recueil de pièces sur la Floride, published by Ternaux-Comprans in 1841, is one entitled: “Relation de ce qui arriva pendant le voyage du capitaine Soto, et details sur la nature du pays qu’il parcourut. Par Luis Hernandez de Biedma.” A note by Muñoz states that Biedma accompanied Soto in quality of Factor to His Majesty, as appears by a decision of the Council of the Indies in 1544. Notwithstanding the discrepancy in the Christian name of the author, it is evident that Antonio and Luis Hernandez are one and the same person. A translation of this document is given in the present work.
the lodging of the Governor, and entered into a court, over the which were certaine galleries where hee was, who came downe and received them at the staires, whereby they went up into the galleries: when he was come up, he commanded chairs to be given them to sit on. And Andrew de Vasconcelos told him who hee and the other Portugales were, and how they all were come to accompany him, and serve him in his voyage. He gave him thanks, and made shew of great contentment for his comming and offer. And the table being alreadie laid, he invited them to dinner. And being at dinner, he commanded his steward to seeke a lodging for them near unto his owne, where they might be lodged. The Adelantado departed from Sivil to Saint Lucar with al the people which were to goe with him. And he commanded a muster to be made, at the which the Portugales shewed themselves armed in verie bright armour, and the Castellans very gallant with silke upon silke, with many pinking and cuts. The Governour, because these braveries in such an action did not like him, commanded that they should muster another day, and every one should come forth with his armour; at the which the Portugales came as at the first, armed with very good armour. The Governour placed them in order neere unto the standard which the ensigne-bearer carried. The Castellanes for the most part did weare very bad and rustie shirts of maile, and all of them head-peeces and steele cappes, and very bad lances. And some of them sought to come among the Portugales. So those passed and were counted and enroled, which Soto liked and accepted of, and did accompanie him into Florida; which were in all sixe hundred men. He had alreadie bought seven ships, and had all necessarie provision aboard them. He appointed captaines, and delivered to every one his ship, and gave them in a role what people every one should carrie with them.
CHAPTER IV.

How the Adelantado with his people departed from Spaine, and came to the Canaries, and afterward to the Antiles.

In the yeere of our Lord 1538, in the moneth of Aprill, the Adelantado delivered his shippes to the captaines which were to goe in them; and tooke for himselfe a new ship, and good of saile, and gave another to Andrew de Vasconcelos, in which the Portugales went; hee went over the barre of S. Lucar on Sunday, being S. Lazarus day, in the morning, of the moneth and yeere aforesaid, with great joy, command- ing his trumpets to be sounded, and many shots of the ordi- nance to be discharged. Hee sailed foure daies with a prosper- ous wind, and suddenly it calmed—the calmes continued eight daies with swelling seas, in such wise, that wee made no way. The 15 day after his departure from S. Lucar, hee came to Gomera, one of the Canaries, on Easter day in the morning. The Earle of that island was apparrelled all in white, cloke, jerkin, hose, shooes, and cappe, so that he seemed a Lord of the Gypses. Hee received the Governour with much joy; hee was well lodged, and all the rest had their lodgings gratis, and gat great store of victuals for their monie, as bread, wine, and flesh; and they tooke what was needful for their ships: and the Sunday following, eight days after their arrivall, they departed from the isle of Gomera. The earle gave to Donna Isabella, the Adelantados wife, a bastard daughter that hee had, to bee her waiting maid.

1 "Ho código daquella yolha andaua todo vestido de branco, capa e pelote e calças e capatos e carapuça, q' parecia código de ciganos."—Relação verdadeira, etc., por há fidalgo Deluas. Evora, 1557.

2 The name of this lady, "Doña Leonora de Bobadilla", is supplied by Garcilaso de la Vega (La Florida del Inca, p. 11), who also adds, that she was seventeen years of age, and extremely beautiful,—"cuya hermosura era estremada".
They arrived at the Antilles, in the isle of Cuba, at the port of the city of Sant Iago, upon Whitsunday. As sone as they came thither, a gentleman of the citie sent to the sea side a very faire roan horse, and well furnished, for the Governour, and a mule for Donna Isabella; and all the horsemen and footemen that were in the towne, came to receive him at the seaside. The Governour was well lodged, visited, and served of all the inhabitants of that citie, and all his companie had their lodgings freely; those which desired to goe into the countrie were divided by foure and foure, and sixe and sixe in the farmes or granges, according to the abilitie of the owners of the farmes, and were furnished by them with all things necessary.

CHAPTER V.

Of the inhabitants which are in the citie of S. Iago, and in the other townes of the island; and of the qualitie of the soile, and fruities that it yeeldeth.

The citie of S. Iago hath fourescore houses, which are great and well contrived. The most part have their walles made of bords, and are covered with thatch; it hath some houses builded with lime and stone, and covered with tiles. It hath great orchards and many trees in them, differing from those of Spaine; there be figge trees, which beare figges as Great figges, big as ones fist, yellow within, and of small taste; and other trees, which beare a fruit which they call ananes, 1 in making Ananes, and bignes like to a small pineapple; it is a fruit very sweete in taste; the shel being taken away, the kernel is like

1 This appears to be an error in spelling; the anana, or pine-apple, not presenting these characteristics. Possibly the anona, or sweet-sop, may be referred to; but the description is too vague to allow us to speak with certainty.
a piece of fresh cheese. In the granges abroad in the
countrie there are other great pineapples, which grow on
low trees, and are like the *aloe-tree; they are of a
very good smell and exceeding good taste. Other trees do
beare a fruit which they call mameis,² of the bignes of peaches.
This the islanders do hold for the best fruit of the country.
There is another fruit which they call guayabas,³ like filberds,
as bigge as figges. There are other trees as high as a jave-
line, having one only stocke without any bough, and the
leaves as long as a casting dart; and the fruite is of the big-
nesse and fashion of a cucumber, one bunch beareth 20 or
30, and as they ripen, the tree bendeth downward with
them: they are called in this countrie plantanos, and are of
a good taste, and ripen after they be gathered; but those are
the better which ripen upon the tree itselfe; they beare fruite
but once; and the tree being cut downe, there spring up
others out of the but, which beare fruite the next yeere.
There is another fruit, whereby many people are sustained,
and chiefly the slaves, which are called batatas.⁴ These grow
now in the isle of Terçera, belonging to the kingdome of
Portugal, and they grow within the earth, and are like a
fruit called iname;⁵ they have almost the taste of a chestnut.
The bread of this countrie is also made of rootes, which are
like the batatas. And the stocke whereon those rootes doe
grow is like an elder-tree; they make their ground in little
hillocks, and in each of them they thrust 4 or 5 stakes, and
they gather the rootes a yeere and an halfe after they set
them. If any one, thinking it is a batata or potato roote,
chance to eate of it never so little, hee is in great danger of
death,⁶ which was scene by experience in a soul’dier, who as

¹ Erba babosa.—The scientific term for the aloe.
² The mammee-apple, well known in the West Indies.
³ Guavas.
⁴ The convolvolus batata, or sweet potato.
⁵ Say Iñame, since corrupted into yam.
⁶ This is only the case with the uncooked cassava root.
sone as hee had eaten a very little of one of those rootes, hee died quicklie. They pare these rootes and stampe them, and squeeze them in a thing like a presse; the juyce that cometh from them is of an evill smell. The bread is of little taste, and lesse substance. Of the fruities of Spaine, there are figges and oranges, and they beare fruit all the yeere, because the soil is very ranke and fruitfull. In this countrie are many good horses, and there is greene grasse all the yeere. There be many wild oxen and hogges, whereby the people of the island is well furnished with flesh. Without the townes abroad in the countrie are many fruities. And it happeneth sometimes, that a Christian goeth out of the way and is lost 15 or 20 daies, because of the many paths in the thicke groves that crosse to and fro made by the oxen, and being thus lost, they sustaine themselves with fruities and palmitos,—for there bee many great groves of palme trees through all the island: they yeeld no other fruite that is of any profit. The isle of Cuba is 300 leagues long from the east to the west; and is in some places 30, in others 40, leagues from north to south. It hath 6 townes of Christians; to wit, S. Iago, Baracõa, Bayamo, Puerto de Principes, S. Espirito, and Havana. Every one hath betweene 30 and 40 house- holds, except S. Iago and Havana, which have about 60 or 80 houses. They have churches in each of them, and a chaplen, which confesseth them and saith masse. In S. Iago is a monasterie of Franciscan friers; it hath but few friers, and is well provided of almes, because the countrie is rich. The church of S. Iago hath honest revenew, and there is a curat and prebends and many priests, as the church of that citie, which is the chiefe of all the island. There is in this countrie much gold, and few slaves to get it; for many have made away themselves, because of the Christians evill usage of them in the mines. A steward of Vasques Porcallo, which was an inhabitour in that island, understanding that his slaves would make away themselves, staied for them with a
cudgill in his hand at the place where they were to meete, and told them, that they could neither doe nor thinke any thing that hee did not know before; and that he came thither to kill himselfe with them, to the end, that if he had used them badly in this world, hee might use them worse in the world to come. And this was a meane that they changed their purpose, and turned home againe to doe that which he commanded them.

CHAPTER VI.

How the Governour sent Donna Isabella with the ships to Havana, and he, with some of his people, went thither by land.

The Governour sent from S. Iago his nephew Don Carlos with the ships, in company of Donna Isabella, to tarrie for him at Havana, which is an haven in the west part, toward the head of the island, 180 leagues from the citie of Saint Iago. The Governour, and those which staied with him, bought horses, and proceeded on their journie. The first towne they came unto was Bayamo: they were lodged foure and foure, and sixe and sixe, as they went in company, and where they lodged, they tooke nothing for their diet, for nothing cost them ought save the maiz, or corne for their horses, because the Governor went to visit them from towne to towne, and seased them in the tribute and service of the Indians. Bayamo is 25 leagues from the citie of Saint Iago. Neere unto the towne passeth a great river, which is called Tauto,¹ it is greater then Guadiana, and in it be very great crocodiles, which sometimes hurt the Indians, or the cattell which passeth the river. In all the countrie are neither Wolfe, foxe, beare, lion, nor tiger. There are wild dogges

¹ The Rio de Cauto.
which goe from the houses into the woods and feed upon swine. There be certayne snakes as bigge as a mans thigh, or bigger: they are very slow, they doe no kind of hurt. From Bayamo to Puerto dellos principes are 50 leagues. In the island, from town to towne, the way is made by stubbing up the underwood: and if it bee left but one yere undone, the wood groweth so much, that the way cannot be seene, and the paths of the oxen are so many, that none can travell without an Indian of the countrie for a guide; for all the rest is very hie and thicke woods. From Puerto dellos principes the Governour went to the house of Vasques Porcallo by sea in a bote (for it was neere the sea), to know there some newes of Donna Isabella, which at that instant (as afterward was knowne) was in great distresse, in so much that the ships lost one another; and two of them fell on the coast of Florida, and all of them endured great want of water and victuals. When the storme was over, they met together, without knowing where they were: in the end they descried the cape of S. Anton, a countrie not inhabited of the island of Cuba: there they watered; and at the end of 40 daies, which were passed since their departure from the city of S. Iago, they arrived at Havana. The Governour was presently informed thereof, and went to Donna Isabella. And those which went by land, which were one hundred and fiftie horsemen, being divided into two parts, because they would not oppresse the inhabitants, travelled by S. Espirito, which is 60 leagues from Puerto dellos principes. The food which they carried with them was caçabe bread, which is that whereof I made mention before; and it is of such a qualitie, that if it be wet, it breaketh presently, whereby it happened to some to eate flesh without bread for many daies. They carried dogges with them, and a man of the country which did hunt; and by the way, or where they were to lodge that night, they killed as many hoggges as they needed. In this journie they were well provided of beece and porke;
A RELATION OF

and they were greatly troubled with muskitos, especially in a lake, which is called the mere of Pia, which they had much ado to passe from noone till night; the water might be some halfe league over, and to be sworne about a crossebow shot, the rest came to the waste, and they waded up to the knees in the mire, and in the bottome were cockle-shels, which cut their feete very sore; in such sort, that there was neither boote nor shooe sole that was hole at halfe way. Their clothes and saddels were passed in baskets of palme trees. Passing this lake, stripped out of their clothes, there came many muskitos, upon whose biting there arose a wheale that smarred very much; they strooke them with their hands, and with the blowe which they gave they killed so many, that the blood did runne downe the armes and bodies of the men. That night they rested very little for them, and other nights also in the like places and times. They came to Santo Espirito, which is a towne of thirtie houses; there passeth by it a little river: it is very pleasant and fruitfull, having great store of oranges and citrons, and fruite of the countreie. One halfe of the companie were lodged here, and the rest passed forward 25 leagues to another towne called la Trinidad, of 15 or 20 households. Here is an hospitall for the poore, and there is none other in all the island. And they say, that this towne was the greatest in all the countrie; and that before the Christians came into this land, as a ship passed along the coast, there came in it a very sicke man, which desired the captaine to set him on shore; and the captaine did so, and the ship went her way. The sicke man remained set on shore in that countrie, which untill then had not been haunted by Christians; whereupon the Indians found him, carried him home, and looked unto him till he was whole; and the lord of that towne maried him unto a daughter of his, and had warre with all the inhabitants round about; and by the industrie and valour of the Christian, he subdued and brought under his command all the
people of that island. A great while after, the governour, Diego Velasques, went to conquer it, and from thence discovered New Spaine. And this Christian, which was with the Indians, did pacifie them, and brought them to the obedience and subjection of the governour. From this towne, della Trinidad, unto Havana, are 80 leagues, without any habitation, which they travelled. They came to Havana in the end of March; where they found the Governor, and the rest of the people which came with him from Spaine. The Governour sent from Havana John Dannusco, with a caravele and two brigantines, with 50 men, to discover the haven of Florida; and from thence hee brought two Indians, which he tooke upon the coast; wherewith (as well because they might be necessarie for guides and for interpretours, as because they said by signes there was much gold in Florida) the Governour and all the companie received much contentment, and longed for the houre of their departure, thinking in himselfe that this was the richest countrie that unto that day had been discovered.

1 The conquest of Cuba was effected by Diego Velasquez, in 1511. New Spain was discovered, in 1518, by Juan de Grijalva, who set sail from Cuba with four vessels fitted out at the expense of Velasquez, at that time Governour of the island. On receiving intelligence from Grijalva of the important discovery which he had made, the ambitious Velasquez immediately issued orders for the equipment of a fleet for the conquest of the newly-discovered regions, and gave the command of it to Hernando Cortes,—"the man, of all others, best calculated to achieve this great enterprise; the last man to whom Velasquez, could he have foreseen the results, would have confided it." Prescott, Conquest of Mexico, i, 196.
CHAPTER VII.

How we departed from Havana, and arrived in Florida, and of such things as happened unto us.

Before our departure, the Governour deprive Nunno de Tovar of the office of captaine-generall, and gave it to Porcallo de Figueroa, an inhabitant of Cuba, which was a meane that the shippes were well furnished with victuals: for he gave a great many loads of casabe bread, and manie hogges. The Governour tooke away this office from Nonno de Tovar, because hee had fallen in love with the daughter of the Earle of Gomera, Donna Isabella’s weighting-maid, who, though his office were taken from him (to returne againe to the Governoours favour), though she were with child by him, yet tooke her to his wife, and went with Soto into Florida. The Governour left Donna Isabella in Havana; and with her remained the wife of Don Carlos, and the wives of Baltasar de Gallegos, and of Nonno de Tovar. And hee left for his lieutenant a gentleman of Havana, called John de Roias, for the government of the island.

On Sunday the 18. of May, in the yeere of our Lord 1539, the Adelantado or president departed from Havana in Cuba with his fleete, which were nine vessels, five great ships, two caravels, and two brigantines. They sailed seven daies with a prosperous wind. The 25. day of May, the day de Pasca de Spirito Santo (which we call Whitson Sunday), they saw the land of Florida; and because of the shoalts, they came to an anchor a league from the shore. On Friday the 30. of May they landed in Florida, two leagues from a towne of an Indian lord, called Ucita.¹ They set on land

¹ The reader is referred to the Introduction, for a more particular notice of the various Indian provinces, towns, and villages, mentioned in the following pages as falling in Soto’s route.
two hundred and thirteene horses, which they brought with them, to unburden the shippes, that they might draw the lesse water. Hee landed all his men, and only the sea men remained in the shippes, which in eight daies, going up with the tide every day a little, brought them up unto the towne. As soone as the people were come on shore, hee pitched his campe on the sea side, hard upon the bay which went up unto the towne. And presently the captaine generall Vasques Porcallo, with other seven horsemen, foraged the countrie halfe a league round about, and found sixe Indians, which resisted him with their arrowes, which are the weapons which they use to fight withall. The horsemen killed two of them, and the other foure escaped; because the countrie is cumbersome with woods and bogs, where the horses stacke fast, and fell with their riders, because they were weake with travelling upon the sea. The same night following, the Governoir, with an hundred men in the brigantines, lighted upon a towne, which he found without people, because, that assoone as the Christians had sight of land, they were descried, and saw along the coast many smokes, which the Indians had made to give advice the one to the other. The next day Luys de Moscoso, master of the campe, set the men in order, the horsemen in three squadrons,—the vanguard, the battilion, and the rerewarde: and so they marched that day, and the day following, compassing great creekes which came out of the bay. They came to the towne of Ucita, where the Governour was, on Sunday the first of June, being Trinity Sunday. The towne was of seven or eight houses. The lorde's house stoode neere the shore, upon a very hie mount, made by hand for strength. At another end of the towne stood the church,¹ and on the top of it stood a fowle made of wood, with gilded eies. Heere were found some

¹ The original Portuguese word is mesquita, which would be more correctly rendered by "temple".
pearles of small valew, spoiled with the fire, which the Indians do Pierce and string them like beades, and wear them about their neckes and handwrists, and they esteeme them very much. The houses were made of timber, and covered with palme leaves. The Governour lodged himselfe in the lords houses, and with him Vasques Porcallo, and Luys de Moscoso; and in others that were in the middest of the towne, was the chiefe alcalde or justice, Baltasar de Gallegos, lodged; and in the same houses was set in a place by it selfe, al the provision that came in the ships: the other houses and the church were broken down, and every three or foure soldiers made a little cabin wherein they lodged. The countrie round about was very fennie, and enombred with great and hie trees. The Governor commanded to fel the woods a crossebow shot round about the towne, that the horses might runne, and the Christians might have the advantage of the Indians, if by chance they should set upon them by night. In the waies and places convenient, they had their centinelles of footemen by two and two in every stand, which did watch by turnes, and the horsemen did visit them, and were readie to assist them, if there were any alarme. The Governour made foure capaines of the horsemen, and two of the footemen. The capaines of the horsemen were, one of them, Andrew de Vasconcelos, and another, Pedro Calderan de Badajos; and the other two were his kinsemen, to wit, Arias Tinoco and Alfonso Romo, borne likewise in Badajos. The capaines of the footemen, the one was Francisco Maldonado of Salamanca, and the other Juan Rodriguez Lobillo. While wee were in this towne of Ucita, the two Indians which John Danusco had taken on that coast, and the Governor caried along with him for guides and interpretours, through carelesseenes of two men which had the charge of them, escaped away one night. For which the Governour and all the rest were very sore,
for they had alreadie made some roades, and no Indians
could bee taken, because the countrie was full of marish
grounds, and in many places full of very hie and thicke
woods.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of some invrodes that were made into the countrie; and how there was a
Christian found, which had bin long time in the power of an Indian
Lord.

From the towne of Ucita, the Governour sent the alcalde
mayor, Baltasar de Gallegos, with 40 horsemen and 80 foot-
men, into the countrie, to see if they could take any Indians:
and the captaine, John Rodriguez Lobillo, another way with
50 footmen; the most of them were swordmen and target-
tours, and the rest were shot and crossebowmen. They
passed through a countrie full of bogges, where horses could
not travell. Halfe a league from the campe, they lighted upon
certaine cabins of Indians neere a river; the people that were
in them leaped into the river; yet they tooke foure Indian
women; and twentie Indians charged us, and so distressed
us, that wee were forced to retire to our campe, being, as they
are, exceeding readie with their weapons. It is a people so
warlike and so nimble, that they care not a whit for any
footmen. For if their enemies charge them, they runne
away, and if they turne their backs, they are presently upon
them. And the thing that they most flee, is the shot of an
arrow. They never stand still, but are alwaies running and
traversing from one place to another; by reason whereof
neither crossebow nor arcubuse can aime at them; and before
one crossebowman can make one shot, an Indian will dis-
charge three or foure arrowes; and he seldome misseth what
hee shooteth at. An arrow, where it findeth no armour, pierceth as deeply as a crossebow. Their bowes are very long, and their arrowes are made of certain canes like reedes, very heavie, and so strong, that a sharpe cane passeth thorough a target; some they arme in the point with a sharpe bone of a fish like a chisel, and in others they fasten certaine stones like points of diamants. For the most part, when they light upon an armour, they breake in the place where they are bound together. Those of cane do split and pierce a coate of maile, and are more hurtfull then the other. John Rodriguez Lobillo returned to the campe with sixe men wounded, whereof one died, and brought the foure Indian women, which Baltasar Gallegos had taken in the cabins or cotages. Two leagues from the towne, comming into the plaine field, he espied ten or eleven Indians, among whom was a Christian, which was naked, and scorched with the sunne, and had his armes razed after the manner of the Indians, and differed nothing at all from them. And as soone as the horsemen saw them, they ran toward them. The Indians fled, and some of them hid themselves in a wood, and they overtooke two or three of them, which were wounded; and the Christian, seeing an horseman runne upon him with his lance, began to crie out, Sirs, I am a Christian, slay me not, nor these Indians, for they have saved my life. And straightway he called them, and put them out of feare, and they came forth of the wood unto them. The horsemen tooke both the Christian and the Indians up behind them; and toward night came into the campe with much joy; which thing being knowne by the Governour, and them that remained in the campe, they were received with the like.
CHAPTER IX.

How this Christian came to the land of Florida, and who he was; and what conference he had with the Governour.

This Christian's name was John Ortiz, and he was borne in Sivil, in worshipful parentage. He was twelve yeeres in the hands of the Indians. He came into this countrie with Pamphilo de Narvaez, and returned in the ships to the Island of Cuba, where the wife of the Governour, Pamphilo de Narvaez, was: and by his commandement, with twenty or thirty other, in a brigandine, returned backe againe to Florida; and comming to the port in the sight of the towne, on the shore they saw a cane sticking in the ground, and riven at the top, and a letter in it: and they beleeved that the Governour had left it there to give advertisement of himselfe, when he resolved to goe up into the land; and they demanded it of foure or five Indians, which walked along the sea shore; and they bad them, by signes, to come on shore for it, which, against the will of the rest, John Ortiz and another did. And as soone as they were on land, from the houses of the towne issued a great number of Indians, which compassed them about, and tooke them in a place where they could not flee; and the other, which sought to defend himselfe, they presentlie killed upon the place, and tooke John Ortiz alive, and carried him to Ucita their lord. And those of the brigandine sought not to land, but put themselves to sea, and returned to the island of Cuba. Ucita commanded to bind John Ortiz hand and foote upon foure stakes aloft upon a raft, and to make a fire under him, that there he might bee burned. But a daughter of his desired him that he would not put him to death, alleging that one only Christian could do him neither hurt nor good, telling him, that it was more for his honour to keepe him as a cap-
tive. And Ucita granted her request, and commanded him to be cured of his wounds; and as soon as he was whole, he gave him the charge of the keeping of the temple, because that by night the wolves did carry away the dead corpses out of the same; who commended himselfe to God, and tooke upon him the charge of his temple. One night the wolves gate from him the corpse of a little child, the sonne of a principal Indian; and going after them, he threw a darte at one of the wolves, and strooke him that carried away the corps, who, feelinge himselfe wounded, left it, and fell downe dead neere the place; and hee not woting what he had done, because it was night, went backe againe to the temple; the morning being come, and finding not the bodie of the child, he was very sad. As soone as Ucita knew thereof, he resolved to put him to death; and sent by the tract, which he said the wolves went, and found the bodie of the child, and the wolfe dead a little beyond: whereat Ucita was much contented with the Christian, and with the watch which hee kept in the temple, and from thence forward esteemed him much. Three yeeres after hee fell into his hands, there came another lord, called Mocoço, who dwelleth two daies journey from the port, and burned his towne. Ucita fled to another towne that he had in another sea port. Thus John Ortiz lost his office and favour that he had with him. These people being worshippers of the divell, are wont to offer up unto him the lives and blood of their Indians, or of any other people they can come by; and they report, that when he will have them doe that sacrifice unto him, he speakeseth with them, and telleth them that he is athirst, and willeth them to sacrifice unto him. John Ortiz had notice by the damsell that had delivered him from the fire, how her father was determined to sacrifice him the day following, who willed him to flee to Mocoço, for shee knew that he would use him well; for she heard say, that he had asked for him, and said he would be glad to see him; and because he knew not the
way, she went with him halfe a league out of the towne by
night, and set him in the way, and returned, because she
would not be discovered. John Ortiz travailed all that
night, and by the morning came unto a river, which is in a river.
the territorie of Mocoço; and there he saw two Indians fish-
ing; and because they were in war with the people of Ucita,
and their languages were different, and hee knew not the
language of Mocoço, he was afraid (because he could not tell
them who hee was, nor how hee came thither, nor was able
to answer any thing for himselfe) that they would kill him,
taking him for one of the Indians of Ucita; and before they
espied him, he came to the place where they had laid their
weapons; and as soone as they saw him, they fled toward
the towne; and although he willed them to stay, because he
meant to do them no hurt, yet they understood him not, and
ran away as fast as ever they could. And as soone as they
came to the towne with great outcries, many Indians came
forth against him, and began to compasse him to shoote at
him: John Ortiz seeing himselfe in so great danger, shielded
himselfe with certaine trees, and began to shrecce out, and
crie very loud, and to tell them that he was a Christian, and
that he was fled from Ucita, and was come to see and serve
Mocoço his lord. It pleased God, that at that very instant
there came thither an Indian that could speake the language
and understood him, and pacified the rest, who told them
what hee said. Then ran from thence three or foure Indians
to beare the newes to their lord, who came forth a quarter
of a league from the towne to receive him, and was very
glad of him. He caused him presently to sweare according
to the custome of the Christians, that he would not run away
from him to any other lord, and promised him to entreat
him very well; and that if at any time there came any
Christians into that countrie, he would freely let him goe,
and give him leave to goe to them; and likewise tooke his
oth to performe the same, according to the Indian custome.
About three yeares after, certaine Indians, which were fishing at sea two leagues from the towne, brought newes to Mocoço that they had seene ships; and hee called John Ortiz, and gave him leave to go his way; who, taking his leave of him, with all the haste he could, came to the sea, and finding no ships, he thought it to be some deceit, and that the cacique had done the same to learne his mind; so he dwelt with Mocoço nine yeeres, with small hope of seeing any Christians. As soone as our Governor arrived in Florida, it was knowne to Mocoço, and straightway he signified to John Ortiz that Christians were lodged in the towne of Ucita: and he thought he had jested with him, as hee had done before, and told him, that by this time he had forgotten the Christians, and thought of nothing else but to serve him. But he assured him that it was so, and gave him licence to goe unto them; saying unto him, that if hee would not doe it, and if the Christians should goe their way, he should not blame him, for he had fulfilled that which hee had promised him. The joy of John Ortiz was so great, that hee could not beleue that it was true; notwithstanding, he gave him thankes, and tooke his leave of him; and Mocoço gave him tenne or eleven principall Indians to beare him companie; and as they went to the port where the Governour was, they met with Baltasar de Gallégos, as I have declared before.

As soone as he was come to the campe, the Governour commanded to give him a sute of apparell, and very good armour, and a faire horse, and enquired of him, whether hee had notice of any countrie, where there was any gold or silver? He answered, No, because he never went ten leagues compasse from the place where he dwelt; but that thirty leagues from thence dwelt an Indian lord, which was called Parocossi, to whom Mocoço and Ucita, with al the rest of that coast, paied tribute, and that hee peradventure might have notice of some good countrie; and that his land was better then that of the sea coast, and more fruitfull and plentifull
of maiz; whereof the Governour received great contentment; and said, that he desired no more then to finde victuals, that hee might goe into the maine land, for the land of Florida was so large that in one place or other there could not chuse but bee some rich countrie. The cacique Mocoço came to the port to visit the Governor, and made this speech following:

Right hie and mightie Lord, I being lesser in mine owne conceit for to obey you, then any of those which you have under your command; and greater in desire to doe you greater services, doe appeare before your Lordship with so much confidence of receiving favour, as if in effect this my good will were manifested unto you in workes: not for the small service I did unto you, touching the Christian which I had in my power, in giving him freely his libertie (for I was bound to doe it to preserve mine honour, and that which I had promised him), but because it is the part of great men to use great magnificences: and I am perswaded, that as in bodily perfections, and commanding of good people, you doe excede all men in the world, so likewise you doe in the parts of the minde, in which you may boast of the bountie of nature. The favour which I hope for of your Lordship is, that you would hold mee for yours, and bethinke your selfe to command me any thing, wherein I may doe you service.

The Governour answered him, that although in freeing and sending him the Christian, he had preserved his honour and promise, yet he thanked him, and held it in such esteeme, as it had no comparison; and that hee would alwaies hold him as his brother, and would favour him in all things to the utmost of his power. Then he commanded a shirt to be given him, and other things, wherewith the cacique being verie well contented, tooke his leave of him, and departed to his owne towne.
CHAPTER X.

How the Governour sent the ships to Cuba, and left an hundred men at the haven de Spirito Santo, and himself with the rest of his people went into the maine land.

From the port de Spirito Santo, where the Governour lay, he sent the alcalde mayor, Baltasar de Gallegos, with fifty horsemen, and thirty or forty footemen, to the province of Paracossi, to view the disposition of the countrie, and enforce himselfe of the land farther inward, and to send him word of such things as he found. Likewise he sent his shippes backe to the island of Cuba, that they might returne within a certaine time with victuals. Vasques Porcallo de Figueroa, which went with the Governour as capitaine generall (whose principall intent was to send slaves from Florida to the island of Cuba, where he had his goods and mines), having made some inrodes, and seeing no Indians were to be got, because of the great bogs and thicke woods that were in the countrie, considering the disposition of the same, determined to returne to Cuba. And though there was some difference between him and the Governour, whereupon they neither dealt nor conversed together with good countenance, yet notwithstanding with loving words he asked him leave and departed from him. Baltasar de Gallegos came to the Paracossi. There came to him thirty Indians from the cacique, which was absent from his towne, and one of them made this speech.

Paracossi, the Lord of this province, whose vassals we are, sendeth us unto your worship, to know what it is that you seeke in this his countrie, and wherein he may doe you service.

Baltasar de Gallegos said unto him, that hee thanked them very much for their offer, willing them to warne their lord to come to his towne, and that there they would talke and
confirm their peace and friendship, which he much desired. The Indians went their way, and returned the next day, and said, that their lord was ill at ease, and therefore could not come, but that they came on his behalf to see what he demanded. He asked them if they knew or had notice of any rich country where there was gold or silver. They told them they did: and that towards the west, there was a province which was called Cale; and that others that inhabited other countries had war with the people of that country, where the most part of the yeer was sommer, and that there was much gold: and that when those their enemies came to make war with them of Cale, these inhabitants of Cale did weare hats of gold, in manner of head pieces. Baltasar de Gallegos, seeing that the cacique came not, thinking all that they said was fained, with intent that in the mean time they might set themselves in safetie, fearing, that if he did let them goe, they would returne no more, commanded the thirty Indians to be chained, and sent word to the Governour, by eight horsemen, what had passed: whereof the Governour with all that were with him, at the port de Spirito Santo, received great comfort, supposing that that which the Indians reported might be true. Hee left Captaine Calderan at the port, with thirtie horsemen, and seventie footmen, with provision for two yeeres, and himselfe with all the rest marched into the maine land, and came to the Paracossi, at whose towne Baltasar de Gallegos was: and from thence with all his men tooke the way to Cale. He passed by a little towne, called Acela, and came to another, called Tocaste: and from thence he went before with thirtie horsemen, and fiftie footmen toward Cale. And passing by a towne, whence the people were fled, they saw Indians a little from thence in a lake; to whom the interpretour spake. They came unto a lake. Them and gave them an Indian for a guide: and hee came to a river with a great current, and upon a tree, which was in the midst of it, was made a bridge, whereon the men passed:
the horses swam over by a hawser that they were pulled by
from the other side: for one, which they drove in at the first
without it, was drowned. From thence the Governour sent
two horsemen to his people that were behind, to make haste
after him; because the way grew long, and their victuals
short. Hee came to Cale, and found the towne without
people. He took three Indians which were spies, and tar-
rried there for his people that came after, which were sore
vexed with hunger and evill waies, because the countrie was
very barren of maiz, low, and full of water, bogs, and thicke
woods; and the victuals which they brought with them from
the port de Spirito Santo, were spent. Wheresoever any
towne was founde, there were some beetees, and hee that came
first gathered them, and sodden with water and salt, did eate
them without any other thing: and such as could not get
them, gathered the stalkes of maiz and eate them; which, be-
cause they were young, had no maiz in them. When they
came to the river which the Governour had passed, they
found palmitos upon low palme trees, like those of Andaluzia.
There they met with the two horsemen which the Governour
sent unto them, and they brought newes that in Cale there
was plentie of maiz; at which newes they all rejoiced. As
soone as they came to Cale, the Governour commanded
them to gather all the maiz that was ripe in the field, which
was sufficient for three moneths. At the gathering of it the
Indians killed three Christians, and one of them which were
taken told the Governour, that within seven daies journie,
there was a very great province, and plentifull of maize,
which was called Apalache. And presently hee departed
from Cale with fifty horsemen, and sixty footemen. He left
the master of the campe, Luys de Moscoso, with all the rest
of the people there, with charge that hee should not depart
thence untill he had word from him. And because hitherto
none had gotten any slaves, the bread that every one was to

1 Probably related to the beetroot, and used as a salad.
eate, he was faine himselfe to beate in a morter made in a peece of timber, with a pestle, and some of them did sift the flower through their shirts of maile. They baked their bread upon certayne tileshares which they set over the fire, in such sort as heretofore I have said they use to doe in Cuba. It is so troubelome to grind their maiz, that there were many that would rather not eate it, then grind it: and did eate the maiz parched and sodden.

CHAPTER XI.

How the Governour came to Caliuen, and carrying from thence the cacique with him went to Napetuca, where the Indians sought to have taken him from him, and in an assault many of them were slaine, and taken prisoners.

The 11 day of August 1589, the Governour departed from Cale; hee lodged in a little town called Ytara, and the next day in another called Potano, and the third day at Utinama, and came to another towne, which they named the towne of Evill Peace; because an Indian came in peace, saying, that he was the cacique, and that he with his people would serve the Governour, and that if he would set free twenty-eight persons, men and women, which his men had taken the night before, he would command provision to be brought him, and would give him a guide to instruct him in his way. The Governour commanded them to be set at libertie, and to keepe him in safeguard. The next day in the morning there came many Indians, and set themselves round about the towne neere to a wood. The Indian wished them to carrie him neere them; and that he would speake unto them, and assure them, and that they would doe whatsoever hee com-
mended them. And when he saw himselfe neere unto them he brake from them, and ran away so swiftly from the Chris-
tians, that there was none that could overtake him, and all
of them fled into the woods. The Governor commanded to loose a grayhound, which was alreadie fleshed on them, which passing by many other Indians, caught the counterfeit cacique, which had escaped from the Christians, and held him till they came to take him. From thence the Governor lodged at a towne called Cholupaha: and because it had store of maiz in it, they named it Villa farta. Beyond the same there was a river, on which he made a bridge of timber, and travelled two daies through a desert. The 17 of August, he came to Caliquen, where he was informed of the province of Apalache. They told him that Pamphilo de Narvaez had bin there, and that there hee tooke shipping, because hee could find no way to goe forward: that there was none other towne at al; but that on both sides was all water. The whole companie were very sad for these newes; and counselled the Governor to goe backe to the port de Spirito Santo, and to abandon the countrie of Florida, lest hee should perish as Narvaez had done: declaring, that if he went forward, he could not returne backe when he would, and that the Indians would gather up that small quantitie of maiz which was left. Whereunto the Governor answered, that he would not goe backe, till he had seen with his eies that which they reported; saying, that hee could not beleve it, and that wee should be put out of doubt before it were long. And he sent to Luys de Moscoso to come presently from Cale, and that he tarried for him here. Luys de Moscoso and many others thought, that from Apalache they should returne backe; and in Cale they buried their yron tooles, and divers other things. They came to Caliquen with great trouble; because the countrie, which the Governor had passed by, was spoiled and destitute of maiz. After all the people were come together, hee commanded a bridge to be made over a river that passed neere the towne.

Hee departed from Caliquen the 10 of September, and carriied the cacique with him. After hee had travelled three daies,
there came Indians peaceably, to visit their lord, and every
day met us on the way playing upon flutes: which is a token
that they use, that men may know that they come in peace.
They said, that in our way before there was a cacique, whose
name was Uzachil, a kinsman of the cacique of Caliquen
their lord, waiting for him with many presents, and they
desired the Governor that he would loose the cacique. But
he would not, fearing that they would rise, and would not
give him any guides, and sent them away from day to day
with good words. He travelled five daies, he passed by
some small townes, he came to a towne called Napetuca, the
15 day of September. Thither came fourteen or fifteen
Indians, and besought the governor to let loose the cacique
of Caliquen their lord. He answered them that he held him
not in prison, but that hee would have him to accompane
him to Uzachil. The Governour had notice by John Ortiz,
that an Indian told him how they determined to gather them-
selves together, and come upon him, and give him battell,
and take away the cacique from him. The day that it was
agreed upon, the Governour commanded his men to bee in a
readines, and that the horsemen should bee readie armed and
on horsebacke every one in his lodging, because the Indians
might not see them, and so more confidently come to the
towne. There came foure hundred Indians in sight of the
campe with their bowes and arrowes, and placed themselves
in a wood, and sent two Indians to bid the Governour to
deliver them the cacique. The Governour, with sixe foot-
men leading the cacique by the hand, and talking with him,
to secure the Indians, went toward the place where they
were: and seeing a fit time, commanded to sound a trumpet:
and presently those that were in the towne in the houses,
both horse and foot, set upon the Indians, which were so
suddenly assaulted that the greatest care they had was
which way they should flee. They killed two horses; one
was the Governour's, and he was presently horsed againe
upon another. There were thirty or forty Indians slain.
The rest fled to two very great lakes, that were somewhat
distant the one from the other: there they were swimming,
and the Christians round about them. The calievermen and
crossebowmen shot at them from the banke; but the distance
being great, and shooting afarre off, they did them no hurt.
The Governour commanded that the same night they should
compass one of the lakes, because they were so great, that
there were not men enow to compass them both. Being beset
as soone as night shut in, the Indians, with determination to
runne away, came swimming very softly to the banke; and
to hide themselves, they put a water-lillie leafe on their
heads. The horsemen, as soone as they perceived it to stirre,
rann into the water to the horses breasts, and the Indians fled
againe into the lake. So this night passed without any rest
on both sides. John Ortiz persuaded them, that seeing
they could not escape, they should yeeld themselves to the
Governour: which they did, enforced thereunto by the cold-
ness of the water; and one by one, hee first whom the cold
did first overcome, cried to John Ortiz, desiring that they
would not kill him, for he came to put himselfe into the
hands of the Governour. By the morning watch they made
an end of yeelding themselves: only twelve principall men,
being more honorable and valorous then the rest, resolved
rather to die then to come into his hands. And the Indians
of Paracossi, which were now loosed out of chaines, went
swimming to them, and pulled them out by the haire of their
heads, and they were all put in chaines; and the next day
were divided among the Christians for their service.

Being thus in captivity, they determined to rebell; and
gave in charge to an Indian, which was interpretour, and held
to be valiant, that as soone as the Governour did come to speake
with him, he should cast his hands about his necke, and
choke him: who, when he saw opportunitie, laid hands on
the Governour, and before he cast his hands about his neck,
he gave him such a blow on the nostrils, that hee made them gush out with blood, and presently all the rest did rise. He that could get any weapons at hand, or the handle where-with he did grind the maiz, sought to kill his master, or the first hee met before him: and hee that could get a lance or sword at hand, bestirred himselfe in such sort with it, as though he had used it all his life time. One Indian in the market-place, enclosed betwene fifteen or twenty footemen, made away like a bull, with a sword in his hand, till certaine halbardiers of the Governour came, which killed him: another got up with a lance to a loft made of canes, which they build to keepe their maiz in, which they call a barbacoa, and there hee made such a noise, as though tenne men had been there defending the doore; they slew him with a partisan. The Indians were in all about two hundred men. They were all subdued. And some of the youngest the Governour gave to them which had good chains, and were carefull to looke to them that they gat not away. Al the rest he commanded to be put to death, being tied to a stake in the midst of the market-place; and the Indians of the Paracossi did shooe them to death.

CHAPTER XII.

How the Governour came to Apalache, and was informed, that within the land there was much Gold.

The Governour departed from Napetuca the 23 of September; he lodged by a river, where two Indians brought him a buck from the cacique of Uzachil. The next day he passed by a great towne called Hapaluya, and lodged at Hapaluya, a great towne Uzachil, and found no people in it, because they durst not Uzachil.
tarrie, for the notice the Indians had of the slaughter of Napetuca. He found in that towne great store of maiz, french beanes, and pompions,* which is their foode, and that wherewith the Christians there sustained themselves; the maiz is like coarse millet, and the pompions are better and more savorie then those of Spaine. From thence the Governour sent two captaines, each a sundry way, to seeke the Indians. They tooke an hundred men and women; of which, aswel there as in other places where they made any inrodes, the capitaine chose one or two for the Governour, and divided the rest to himselfe, and those that went with him. They led these Indians in chains with yron collars about their neckes; and they served to carrie their stuffe, and to grind their maiz, and for other services that such captives could doe. Sometimes it happened, that going for wood or maiz with them, they killed the Christian that led them, and ran away with the chaine; others filed their chains by night with a piece of stone, wherewith they cut them, and use instead of yron. Those that were perceived paid for themselves, and for the rest, because they should not dare to doe the like another time. The women and young boyes, when they were once an hundred leagues from their countrie, and had forgotten things, they let goe loose, and so they served; and in a very short space they understood the language of the Christians. From Uzachil the Governour departed toward Apalache, and in two daies journie hee came to a towne called Axille, and from thence forward the Indians were carelesse, because they had as yet no notice of the Christians.

The next day in the morning, the first of October, he departed from thence, and commanded a bridge to bee made over a river, which hee was to passe. The deepe of the river where the bridge was made, was a stones cast, and forward a crossebow shot, the water came to the waste; and the wood, whereby the Indians came to see if they could
defend the passage, and disturb those which made the bridge, was very hie and thicke. The crossebow men so bestirred themselves, that they made them give back; and certain plancks were cast into the river, whereon the men passed, which made good the passage. The Governor passed upon Wednesday, which was S. Francis his day, and lodged at a towne which was called Vitachuco, subject to Apalache; he found it burning, for the Indians had set it on fire. From thence forward the countrie was much inhabited, and had great store of maiz. Hee passed by many granges, like hamlets. On Sunday the 25 of October, he came to a towne, which is called Uzela, and upon Tuesday to Anaica Apalache, where the lord of all that countrie and province was resident; in which towne the campe master, whose office it is to quarter out and lodge men, did lodge all the companie round about within a league and halfe a league of it. There were other townes, where was great store of maiz, pompions, french beanes, and plumes of the countrie, which are better then those of Spaine, and they grow in the fields without planting. The victuals that were thought necessarie to passe the winter, were gathered from these townes to Anaica Apalache. The Governour was informed that the sea was ten leagues from thence. Hee presently sent a capitaine thither with horsemen and footemen; and sixe leagues on the way he found a towne, which was named Ochete, and so came to the sea, and found a great tree felled, and cut into pieces, with stakes set up like mangers, and saw the skulls of horses. Hee returned with this newes. And that was held for certaine, which was reported of Pamphilo de Narvaez, that there hee had builded the barkes wherewith he went out of the land of Florida, and was cast away at sea. Presently the Governour sent John Danusco, with thirty horsemen, to the port de Spiritu Santo, where Calderan was, with order that they should abandon the port, and all of them come to Apalache. He departed on Saturday, the 17 of November.
In Uzachil and other townes that stood in the way he found
great store of people alreadie carelesse. Hee would take
none of the Indians, for not hindring himselfe, because it
behooved him to give them no leasure to gather themselves
together. He passed through the townes by night, and
rested without the townes three or foure houres. In tenne
daies he came to the port de Spirito Santo. He carried with
him twenty Indian women, which he tooke in Ytara, and
Potano, neere unto Cale, and sent them to Donna Isabella
in the two caravels which hee sent from the port de Spirito
Santo to Cuba. And he carried all the footemen in the
brigandines, and coasting along the shore, came to Apalache.
And Calderan with the horsemen, and some crossebowmen
on foote, went by land; and in some places the Indians set
upon him and wounded some of his men. As soone as he
came to Apalache, presently the Governour sent sawed
plankes and spikes to the sea-side, wherewith was made a
piragua or barke, wherein were embarked thirty men well
armed, which went out of the bay to the sea, looking for
the brigandines. Sometimes they fought with the Indians,
which passed along the harbour in their canoes. Upon
Saturday, the 29th of November, there came an Indian
through the watch undiscovered, and set the towne on fire,
and with the great wind that blew, two parts of it were con-
sumed in a short time. On Sunday, the 28 of December,
came John Danuso with the brigandines. The Governour
sent Francisco Maldonado, a captaine of footemen, with fifty
men to discover the coast westward, and to seeke some port,
because he had determined to go by land, and discover that
part. That day there went out eight horsemen by com-
mandement of the Governor into the field, two leagues about
the towne, to seeke Indians; for they were now so embold-
ened, that within two crossebow shot of the camp, they came
and slew men. They found two men and a woman gathering
french beanes; the men, though they might have fled, yet
because they would not leave the woman, which was one of their wives, they resolved to die fighting; and before they were slaine, they wounded three horses, whereof one died within a few daies after. Calderan going with his men by the sea coast, from a wood that was neere the place, the Indians set upon him, and made him forsake his way, and many of them that went with him forsooke some necessarie victuals, which they carried with them.

Three or foure daies after the limited time given by the Governour to Maldonado for his going and coming, being alreadie determined and resolved, if within eight daies he did not come, to tarrie no longer for him; he came, and brought an Indian, from a province which was called Ochus, sixtie leagues westward from Apalache, where he had found a good port, of good depth and defense against weather. And because the Governor hoped to find a good countrie forward, he was very well contented. And he sent Maldonado for victuals to Havana, with order that he should tarrie for him at the port of Ochus, which hee had discovered, for hee would goe seeke it by land; and if he should chance to stay and not come thither that summer, that then hee should returne to Havana, and should come againe the next summer after, and tarrie for him at that port; for hee said hee would doe none other thing but goe to seeke Ochus. Francisco Maldonado departed, and in his place, for captaine of the footemen remained John de Guzman.

Of those Indians which were taken in Napetuca, the treasurer, John Gaytan, had a young man, which said that he was not of that countrie, but of another farre off toward the sunrising, and that it was long since he had travelled to see countries; and that his countrie was called Yupaha, and that a woman did governe it; and that the towne where she was resident was of a wonderfull bignesse, and that many lords round about were tributaries to her; and some gave her clothes, and others gold in abundance; and hee told how
it was taken out of the mines, and was moulten and refined, as if hee had scene it done, or the divel had taught it him. So that all those which knew any thing concerning the same, said that it was impossible to give so good a relation without having scene it; and all of them, as if they had scene it, by the signes that he gave, beleived all that he said to be true.

CHAPTER XIII.

How the Governour departed from Apalache to seeke Yupaha, and of that which happened unto him.

March the 3, 1540.

On Wednesday the third of March, of the yeere 1540, the Governor departed from Anaica Apalache to seeke Yupaha. He commanded his men to goe provided with maiz for sixtie leagues of desert. The horsemen carried their maiz on their horses, and the footmen at their sides: because the Indians that were for service, with their miserable life that they lead that winter, being naked and in chaines, died for the most part. Within foure daies journie they came to a great river; and they made a piragua or ferrie bote, and because of the great current, they made a cable with chaines, which they fastened on both sides of the river; and the ferrie bote went along by it; and the horses swam over, being drawne with capstans. Having passed the river, in a day and an halfe they came to a towne called Capachiqui. Upon Friday, the 11 of March, they found Indians in armes. The next day five Christians went to seeke morters, which the Indians have to beate their maiz, and they went to certaine houses on the backside of the campe environed with a wood: and within the wood were many Indians which came to spie us; of the
which came other five and set upon us. One of the Christians came running away, giving an alarm unto the camp. Those which were most readie answered the alarme. They found one Christian dead, and three sore wounded. The Indians fled unto a lake adjoining neere a very thicke wood, where the horses could not enter. The Governour departed from Capachiqui, and passed through a desert. On Wednesday, the 21 of the moneth, he came to a towne called Toalli. And from thence forward there was a difference in the houses; for those which were behind us were thatched with straw, and those of Toalli were covered with reeds, in manner of tiles. These houses are verie cleanly. Some of them had walles daubed with clay, which shewed like a mud wall. In all the cold countrie the Indians have every one a house for the winter, daubed with clay within and without, and the doore is very little: they shut it by night, and make fire within; so that they are in it as warme as a stove: and so it continueth all night that they need not clothes: and besides these, they have others for summer; and their kitchins neere them, where they make fire and bake their bread: and they have barbacoas wherein they keepe their maiz; which is an house set up in the aire upon foure stakes, boorded about like a chamber, and the floore of it is of cane hurdles. The difference which lords or principall mens houses have from the rest, besides they be greater, is, that they have great galleries in their fronts, and under them seates made of canes in manner of benches; and round about them they have many lofts, wherein they lay up that which the Indians doe give them for tribute, which is maiz, deeres skins, and mantles of the countrie, which are like blankets: they make them of the inner rinde of the barkes of trees, and some of a kind of grasse like unto nettles, which being beaten, is like unto flaxe. The women cover themselves with these mantles; they put one about them from the wast downward; and another over their shoulder, with their right arme out, like
unto the Egyptians. The men weare but one mantle upon their shoulders after the same manner: and have their secrets hid with a deeres skins, made like a linen breech, which was wont to be used in Spaine. The skins are well corried, and they give them what colour they list, so perfect, that if it be red, it seemeth a very fine cloth in graine, and the blacke is most fine: and of the same leather they make shooes; and they die their mantles in the same colours. The Governour departed from Toalli the 24 of March: he came on Thursday at evening to a small river, where a bridge was made whereon the people passed, and Benit Fernandez, a Portugall, fell off from it, and was drowned. As soone as the Governour had passed the river, a little distance thence he found a towne called Achese. The Indians had no notice of the Christians: they leaped into a river: some men and women were taken; among which was one that understood the youth which guided the Governour to Yupaha: whereby that which he had reported was more confirmed. For they had passed through countries of divers languages, and some which he understood not. The Governour sent by one of the Indians that were taken to call the cacique, which was on the other side of the river. Hee came and made this speech following:

Right high, right mightie, and excellent lord, those things which seldom happen doe cause admiration. What then may the sight of your lordship and your people doe to mee and mine, whom we never saw? especially being mounted on such fierce beasts as your horses are, entring with such violence and furie into my countrie, without my knowledge of your comming. It was a thing so strange, and caused such feare and terrour in our mindes, that it was not in our power to stay and receive your lordship with the solemnitie due to so high and renowned a prince, as your lordship is. And

1 i.e., the gipsies.
trusting in your greatnesse and singular vertues, I doe not onely
hope to be freed from blame, but also to receive favours: and
the first which I demand of your lordship is, that you will
use me, my crowtie, and subjects as your owne: and the
second, that you will tell me who you are, and whence you
come, and whither you goe, and what you seeke, that I the
better may serve you therein.

The Governour answered him, that hee thanked him as
much for his offer and good will, as if hee had received it,
and as if hee had offered him a great treasure: and told him
that he was the sonne of the sun, and came from those parts
where he dwelt, and travelled through that crowtie, and
sought the greatest lord and richest province that was in it.
The cacique told him, that farther forward dwelt a great
lord, and that his dominion was called Ocute. He gave
him a guide, and an interpretour for that province. The
Governour commanded his Indians to bee set free, and tra-
velled through his crowtie up a river very well inhabited.
He departed from his towne the first of Aprill; and left a
very high crosse of wood set up in the middest of the market
place; and because the time gave no more leasure, hee de-
clared to him onely, that that crosse was a memorie of the
same, whereon Christ, which was God and man, and created
the heavens and the earth, suffered for our salvation: there-
fore he exhorted them that they should reverence it: and
they made shew as though they would doe so. The fourth
of Aprill the Governour passed by a towne called Altamaca,
and the 10 of the moneth he came to Ocute. The cacique
sent him two thousand Indians with a present, to wit, many
conies, and partriges, bread of maiz, two hens, and many
dogs: which among the Christians were esteemed as if they
had been fat wethers, because of the great want of flesh
meate and salt, and herof in many places and many times
was great need; and they were so scarce, that if a man fell
sicke, there was nothing to cherish him withall; and with a
sickness, that in another place easilie might have been remedied, he consumed away till nothing but skinne and bones were left: and they died of pure weakness, some of them saying, If I had a slice of meate, or a few cornes of salt, I should not die. The Indians want no fleshmeat: for they kill with their arrowes many deere, hennes, conies, and other wild fowle: for they are very cunning at it: which skill the Christians had not: and though they had it, they had no leisure to use it: for the most part of the time they spent in travell, and durst not presume to straggle aside. And because they were thus scantied of flesh, when sixe hundred men that went with Soto, came to any towne, and found thirty or forty dogs, he that could get one and kill it, thought himselfe no small man: and he that killed it, and gave not his cap-taine one quarter, if he knew it, he frowned on him, and made him feele it, in the watches, or in any other matter of labour that was offered, wherein hee might doe him a displeasure. On Monday the 12 of Aprill, the Governour departed from Ocute: the cacique gave him two hundred Tamenes, to wit, Indians to carrie burdens: hee passed through a towne, the lord whereof was named Cofaquí, and came to a province of an Indian lord, called Patofa, who, because he was in peace with the lord of Ocute, and with the other bordering lords, had many daies before notice of the Governour, and desired to see him: he came to visit him, and made this speech following.

Mightie lord, now with good reason I will crave of fortune to requite this my so great prosperitie with some small adversitie; and I will count myselfe verie rich, seeing I have obtained that, which in this world I most desired, which is, to see, and be able to doe your lordship some service. And although the tongue bee the image of that which is in the heart, and that the contentment which I feele in my heart I cannot dissemble, yet it is not sufficient wholly to manifest the same. Where did this your countrie, which I doe
governe, deserve to be visited of so soveraigne and so excell-
ent a prince, whom all the rest of the world ought to obey
and serve? And those which inhabit it being so base, what
shall be the issue of such happines, if their memorie doe not
represent unto them some adversitie that may betide them,
according to the order of fortune? If from this day for-
ward we may be capable of this benefit, that your lordship
will hold us for your owne, we cannot faile to be favoured
and maintained in true justice and reason, and to have the
name of men. For such as are void of reason and justice,
may be compared to brute beasts. For mine owne part, from
my very heart with reverence due to such a prince, I offer
my selfe unto your lordship, and beseech you, that in reward
of this my true good will, you will vouchsafe to make use of
mine owne person, my countrie, and subjects.

The Governour answered him, that his offers and good
will declared by the effect, did highly please him, whereof
he would alwaies be mindfull to honour and favour him as
his brother. This countrie, from the first peaceable cacique
unto the province of Patofa, which were fiftie leagues, is a
fat countrie, beautifull, and very fruitfull, and very well
watered, and full of good rivers. And from thence to the
port de Spirito Santo, where we first arived in the land of
Florida (which may be three hundred and fifty leagues, little
more or lesse) is a barren land, and the most of it groves of
wild pine trees, low and full of lakes, and in some places
very hie and thicke groves, whither the Indians that were
in armes fled, so that no man could find them, neither could
any horses enter into them. Which was an inconvenience
to the Christians, in regard of the victuals which they found
conveied away; and of the trouble which they had in seek-
ing of Indians to bee their guides.
CHAPTER XIV.

How the Governour departed from the province of Patofa, and went through a desert; where he and all his men fell into great distress, and extreme misery.

In the towe of Patofa, the youth, which the Governour carried with him for an interpretour and a guide, began to fome at the mouth, and tumble on the ground, as one possessed with the divell. They said a gospel over him; and the fit left him. And he said, that foure daies journey from thence toward the sunne rising, was the province that he spake of. The Indians of Patofa said, that toward that part they knew no habitation; but that toward the northwest, they knew a province which was called Coça, a verie plentefull countrie, which had very great townes in it. The cacique told the Governour, that if he would go thither, he would give him guides and Indians for burdens; and if he would goe whither the youth spake of, that he would likewise give him those that he needed: and so, with loving words and offers of courtesie, they tooke their leaves the one of the other. Hee gave him seven hundred Indians to beare burdens. He tooke maiz for foure daies journie. Hee travelled sixe daies by a path, which grew narrow more and more till it was lost altogether. He went where the youth did lead him, and passed two rivers which were waded; each of them was two crossebow-shot over: the water came to the stirrops, and had so great a current, that it was needfull for the horsemen to stand one before another, that the footmen might passe above them leaning unto them. He came to another river of a greater current and largenes, which was passed with more trouble, because the horses
did swim at the comming out about a lances length. Having passed this river, the Governor came to a grove of pine-trees, and threatened the youth, and made as though hee would have cast him to the dogges, because he had told him a lie, saying, it was but four days journeie, and they had travelled nine, and every day seven or eight leagues; and the men by this time were growne weary and weak, and the horses leane through the great scanting of the maiz. The youth said, that hee knew not where hee was. It saved him that he was not cast to the dogges, that there was never another whom John Ortiz did understand. The Governour with them two, and with some horsemen and footmen, leaving the campe in a grove of pine trees, travelled that day five or six leagues to seek a way, and returned at night very comfortlesse, and without finding any signe of way or towne. The next day there were sundrie opinions delivered, whether they should goe backe, or what they should doe: and because backward the countrie whereby they had passed was greatlie spoiled and destitute of maiz, and that which they brought with them was spent, and the men were very weak, and the horses likewise, they doubted much whether they might come to any place where they might helpe themselves.

And besides this, they were of opinion, that going in that sort out of order, that any Indians would presume to set upon them, so that with hunger, or with warre, they could not escape. The Governour determined to send horsemen from thence every way to seeke habitation; and the next day he sent four captains, every one a sundrie way with eight horsemen. At night they came againe, leading their horses, or driving them with a sticke before; for they were so weary, that they could not lead them; neither found they any way nor signe of habitation. The next day, the Governour sent other four, with as many horsemen that
could swim, to passe the one and rivers which they should find, and they had choice horses, the best that were in the campe. The captains were Baltasar de Gallegos, which went up the river; and John Danusco, downe the river; Alfonso Romo, and John Rodriguez Lobillo went into the inward parts of the land. The Governour brought with him into Florida thirteene sowes, and had by this time three hundred swine. He commanded every man should have halfe a pound of hog’s flesh every day; and this hee did three or foure daies after the maiz was all spent. With this small quantitie of flesh, and some sodden hearbs, with much trouble the people were sustained. The Governour dismissed the Indians of Patofa, because hee had no food to give them; who desiring to accompanie and serve the Christians in their necessitie, making shew that it grieved them very much to returne, untill they had left them in a peopled countrie, returned to their owne home. John Danusco came on Sunday late in the evening, and brought newes that he had found a little towne twelve or thirteen leagues from thence: he brought a woman and a boy that he tooke there; with his comming and with those newes, the Governour and all the rest were so glad, that they seemed at that instant to have returned from death to life.

Upon Monday, the twenty-six of Aprill, the Governour departed to go to the towne, which was called Aymay; and the Christians named it the towne of Relief. He left, where the camp had lien, at the foote of a pine tree, a letter buried, and letters carved in the barke of the pine, the contents whereof was this: _Dig here at the foot of this pine, and you shall find a letter._ And this he did, because when the captains came, which were sent to secke some habitation, they might see the letter, and know what was become of the Governour, and which way he was gone. There was no

---

1 _i.e._, ooze. The Portuguese word is _vasas._
other way to the towne, but the markes that John Danusco left made upon the trees. The Governour, with some of them that had the best horses, came to it on the Monday. And all the rest inforcing themselves the best they could, some of them lodged within two leagues of the towne, some within three and foure, every one as he was able to goe, and his strength served him. There was found in the towne a storehouse full of the flower of parched maiz; and some maiz, which was distributed by allowance. Here were foure Indians taken, and none of them would confess any other thing, but that they knew of none other habitation. The Governour commanded one of them to be burned; and presently another confessed, that two daies journie from thence, there was a province that was called Cutifa-Chiqui. Upon Wednesday came the captaines Baltasar de Gallegos, Alfonso Romo, and John Rodriquez Lobillo: for they had found the letter, and followed the way which the Governour had taken toward the towne. Two men of John Rodriquez company were lost, because their horses tired: the Governour checked him very sore for leaving them behind, and sent to seeke them: and as soone as they came, he departed towards Cutifa-Chiqui. In the way three Indians were taken, which said, that the Ladie of that countrie had notice alreadie of the Christians, and staid for them in a towne of hers. The Governour sent by one of them to offer her his friendship, and to advertise her how he was comming thither. The Governour came unto the towne; and presently there came foure canoes to him; in one of them came a sister of the ladie, and approching to the Governour, she said these words:

Excellent lord, my sister sendeth unto you by me to kisse your lordship's hands, and to signifie unto you, that the cause why she came not in person is, that she thinketh to do you greater service staying behind, as she doth, giving order, that with all speed, all her canoes be readie, that your lord-
ship may passe the river, and take your rest, which shall be presentlie performed.

The Governour gave her thankes, and she returned to the other side of the river. Within a little while the Ladie came out of the towne in a chaire, whereon certaine of the principall Indians brought her to the river. She entred into a barge, which had the sterne tilted over, and on the floore her mat readie laied with two cushions upon it one upon another, where she sate her downe; and with her came her principall Indians in other barges, which did wait upon her. She went to the place where the Governor was, and at her comming she made this speech following:

Excellent lord, I wish this comming of your lordship into these your countries, to be most happie: although my power be not answerable to my wil, and my services be not according to my desire, nor such as so high a prince as your lordship deserveth; yet since the good will is rather to be accepted then all the treasures of the world, that without it are offered, with most unfaileable and manifest affection I offer you my person, lands, and subjects, and this small service.

And therewithal she presented unto him great store of clothes of the countrie, which she brought in other canoes; to wit, mantles and skinnes; and tooke from her owne necke a great cordon of perles, and cast it about the necke of the Governour, entertaining him with very gracious speeches of love and courtesie, and commanded canoes to be brought thither, wherein the Governour and his people passed the river. As soone as hee was lodged in the towne, she sent him another present of many hens. This countrie was verie pleasant, fat, and hath goodly meadows by the rivers. Their woods are thin, and ful of walnut trees and mulberrie trees. They said the sea was two daies journie from thence. Within a league, and halfe a league about this towne, were great townes dispeopled, and overgrowne with grasse; which shewed that they had been long without inhabitants. The
Indians said, that two yeere before there was a plague in
that countrie, and that they remoued to other townes. 
There was in their storehouses great quantitie of clothes, 
mantles of yarne made of the barkes of trees, and others made 
of feathers, white, greene, red, and yellow, very fine after 
their use, and profitable for winter. There were also many 
deeres skinnes, with many compartments traced in them; 
and some of them made into hose, stockings, and shooses. 
And the ladie perceiving that the Christians esteemed the 
perles, advised the Governour to send to search certaine 
graves that were in that towne, and that hee should find 
many; and that if hee would send to the dispeopleed townes, 
he might load all his horses. 

They sought the graves of that towne, and there found 
foureteene rooves of perles, and little babies and birds made 
of them. The people were browne, well made, and well 
proportioned, and more civill then any others that were 
seene in all the countrie of Florida; and all of them went 
shod and clothed. 

The youth told the Governour that hee began now to 
enter into the land which he spake of; and some credit was 
given him that it was so, because hee understood the lan-
guage of the Indians; and hee requested that he might bee 
christened, for he said hee desired to become a Christian. 
Hee was christened, and named Peter; and the Governour 
commanded him to bee loosed from a chaine, in which, untill 
that time, he had gone. 

This countrie, as the Indians reported, had been much 
inhabited, and had the fame of a good countrie. And, as it 
seemeth, the youth, which was the Governour’s guide, had 
heard of it, and that which he knew by heresay, hee affirmed 
that hee had seene, and augmented at his pleasure. In this 
towne was found a dagger, and beades, that had belonged to 
Christians. The Indians reported, that Christians had been 
in the haven, which was two daies’ journie from this towne,
many yeeres agoe. Hee that came thither was the governour, the Licenciate Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon, which went to conquer this countrie; and at his comming to the port hee died: and there was a division, quarrels, and slaughters betweene some principal men which went with him, for the principal government. And without knowing any thing of the countrie, they returned home to Hispaniola. All the companie thought it good to inhabit that countrie, because it was a temperat climate; and that if it were inhabited, al the shippes of New Spaine, of Peru, Santa Martha, and Tierra firme, in their returned for Spaine, might well touch there, because it was in their way, and because it was a good countrie, and sited fit to raise commoditie. The Governour, since his intent was to seeke another treasure like that of Atabalipa, lord of Peru, was not contented with a good countrie, nor with pearles, though many of them were worth their weight in gold. And if the countrie had been divided among the Christians, those which the Indians had fished for afterward, would have been of more value; for those which they had, because they burned them in the fire, did leese their colour. The Governour answered them that urged him to inhabit, that in all the countrie there were not victuals to sustaine his men one moneth, and that it was needfull to resort to the port of Ocus, where Maldonado was to stay for them; and that if no richer countrie were found, they might returne againe to that whenssoever they would; and in the meane time the Indians would sow their fields, and it would be better furnished with maiz.

He inquired of the Indians, whether they had notice of any great lord farther into the land. They told him, that twelve daies journie from thence, there was a province called Chiaha, subject to the lord of Coça. Presently, the Governour determined to seeke that land. And being a sterne

---

1 Old word for "lose", from the Anglo-Saxon "leosan".  
"No cause nor client fat, will Chevril leese,  
But as they come on both sides he takes fees." —Ben Jonson.
man, and of few words, though he was glad to sift and know the opinion of all men, yet after hee had delivered his owne, hee would not be contraried, and alwaies did what liked himselfe, and so all men did condescend unto his will. And though it seemed an errour to leave that countrey (for others might have been sought round about, where the people might have been sustained untill the harvest had been readie there, and the maiz gathered), yet there was none that would say any thing against him after they knew his resolution.

CHAPTER XV.

*How the Governour departed from Cutifa-Chiqui to seeke the province of Coqa; and what happened unto him in the way.*

The Governour departed from Cutifa-Chiqui the third day of May. And because the Indians had revolted, and the will of the ladie was perceived, that if she could, she would depart without giving any guides or men for burdens, for the wrongs which the Christians had done to the Indians (for there never want some among many of a base sort, that for a little gaine doe put themselves and others in danger of undoing): the Governour commanded her to be kept in safeguard, and carried with him, not with so good usage as she deserved for the good will she shewed, and good entertainement that she had made him. And he verified that old proverb which saith: "For weldoing I receive evil." And so he carried her on foot, with his bondwomen to look unto her. In all the townes where the Governour passed, the ladie commanded the Indians to come and carrie the burdens from one towne to another. We passed through her countrey an hundred leagues, in which, as we saw, she was much obeyed. For the Indians did all that she commanded them with great efficacie and diligence. Peter, the youth that was our guide, said, that she was not the ladie herselfe, but a
neece of hers, which came to that towne to execute certaine principal men by commandement of the ladie, which had withheld her tribute; which words were not beleived, because of the lies which they had found in him before: but they bare with all things, because of the need which they had of him, to declare what the Indians said. In seven daies space the Governour came to a province called Chalaque, the poorest country of maiz that was seene in Florida. The Indians fed upon rootes and herbes, which they seeke in the fields, and upon wild beasts, which they kil with their bowes and arrowes: and it is a verie gentle people. All of them goe naked, and are very leane. There was a lord, which for a great present, brought the Governour two deeres skins: and there were in that countrie many wild hennes. In one towne they made him a present of seven hundred hennes, and so in other townes they sent him those which they had or could get. From this province to another, which is called Xualla, he spent five daies: here he found very little maiz; and for this cause, though the people were wearied, and the horses very weake, he staied no more but two daies. From Ocute to Cutifa-Chiqui, may bee some hundred and thirtie leagues, whereof eighty are wilderness. From Cutifa-Chiqui to Xualla, two hundred and fiftie, and it is an hillie countrie. The Governour departed from Xualla toward Guaxule: he passed very rough and his hilles. In that journie, the ladie of Cutifa-Chiqui (whom the Governour caried with him, as is aforesaid, with purpose to carrie her to Guaxule, because her territorie reached thiser) going on a day with the bondwomen which lead her, went out of the way, and entered into a wood, saying, she went to ease herselfe, and so she deceived them, and hid herselfe in the wood; and though they sought her they could not find her. She carried away with her a little chest made of canes, in manner of a coffer, which they call Petaca, full of unbored perles. Some which could judge of them, said, that they were of great value. An Indian woman that waited on her

---

1 Probably the prairie hen, a species of grouse, is alluded to.
did carry them. The Governour, not to discontent her alto-
gether, left them with her, making account that in Guaxule
he would ask them of her, when he gave her leave to returne:
which coffer she carried away, and went to Xualla with three
slaves which fled from the campe, and one horseman which
remained behinde, who falling sick of an ague, went out of
the way and was lost. This man, whose name was Alimamos,
dealt with the slaves to change their evill purpose, and returne
with him to the Christians; which two of them did; and
Alimamos and they overtooke the Governour fifty leagues
from thence, in a province called Chiaha; and reported how
the ladie remained in Xualla with a slave of Andrew de
Vasconcellos, which would not come backe with them, and
that of a certaintie they lived as man and wife together, and
meant to goe both to Cutifa-Chiqui. Within five daies the
Governour came to Guaxule. The Indians there gave him a
present of three hundred dogges, because they saw the Chris-
tians esteeme them, and sought them to feed on them: for
among them they are not eaten. In Guaxule, and all that
way, was very little maiz. The Governour sent from thence
an Indian with a message to the cacique of Chiaha, to desire
him to gather some maiz thither, that he might rest a few
daies in Chiaha. The Governour departed from Guaxule,
and in two daies journie came to a towne called Canasagua.
There met him on the way twenty Indians, every one loaden
with a basket ful of mulberries: for there be many, and those
very good, from Cutifa-Chiqui thither, and so forward in
other provinces, and also nuts and plummets. And the trees
grow in the fields without planting or dressing them, and are
as big and as ranck as though they grew in gardens digged
and watered. From the time that the Governour departed
from Canasagua, hee journied five daies through a desert;
and two leagues before hee came to Chiaha, there met him
fifteen Indians loaden with maiz, which the cacique had sent;
and they told him on his behalfe, that he waited his comming
with twenty barnes full of it; and farther, that himselfe, his
countrie, and subjects, and all things els, were at his service.

On the 5 day of June, the Governor entred into Chiaha:
the cacique voided his owne houses, in which he lodged, and
received him with much joy, saying these words following:

Mightie and excellent lord, I hold myselfe for so happie a
man, in that it hath pleased your lordship to use me, that
nothing could have happened unto me of more contentment,
nor that I would have esteemed so much. From Guaxule
your lordship sent unto me, that I should prepare maiz for
you in this towne for two months. Here I have for you
twenty barnes full of the choisest that in all the countrie
could be found. If your lordship bee not entertained by me
in such sort, as is fit for so hie a prince, respect my tender
age, which excuseth me from blame, and receive my good will,
which with much loyalty, truth, and sinceritie, I will alwaies
shew in anything which shall concerne your lordships service.

The Governor answered him that he thanked him very much
for his service and offer, and that he would alwaies account
him as his brother. There was in this towne much butter in
gourds, melted like oile: they said it was the fat of beares.
There was found also great store of oile of walnuts, which
was cleare as butter, and of a good taste, and a pot full of
honie of bees, which neither before nor afterward was seene
in all the countrie. The towne was in an island, betwenee
two armes of a river, and was seated nigh one of them. The
river divideth it selfe into those two branches two crossebow
shot above the towne, and meeteth againe a league beneath
the same. The plaine betweene both the branches is some-
times one crossebow shot, sometimes two crossebow shot over.
The branches are very broad, and both of them may be
waded over. There were all along them verie good meadows,
and manic fields sowne with maiz. And because the Indians
staid in their towne, the Governour only lodged in the
houses of the cacique, and his people in the fields; where
there was ever a tree, everie one tooke one for himselfe. Thus the camp lay separated one from another, and out of order. The Governour winked at it, because the Indians were in peace, and because it was very hot, and the people should have suffered great extremitie, if it had not bin so. The horses came thither so weake, that for feeblenesse they were not able to carrie their masters: because that from Cutifa-Chiqui, they alwaies travelled with verie little provender, and were hunger-starved and tired ever since they came from the desert of Ocute. And because the most of them were not in case to use in battell, though need should require, they sent them to feed in the night a quarter of a league from the camp. The Christians were there in great danger, because that if at this time the Indians had set upon them, they had been in evill case to have defended themselves. The Governour rested there thirtie daies, in which time, because the countrie was very fruitfull, the horses grew fat. At the time of his departure, by the importunitie of some, which would have more then was reason, hee demanded of the cacique thirty women to make slaves of. Hee answered that he would conferre with his chiefe men. And before hee returned an answere, one night all of them with their wives and children forsooke the towne, and fled away. The next day the Governour purposing to goe to seeke them, the cacique came unto him, and at his comming used these words unto the Governour:

_Mightie lord, with shame and feare of your lordship, because my subjects against my will have done amisse in absentrying themselves, I went my way without your license; and knowing the error which I have committed, like a loyall subject, I come to yeeld myselfe into your power, to dispose of mee at your owne pleasure. For my subjects do not obey mee, nor doe any thing but what an uncle of mine commandeth, which governeth this countrie for me, until I be of a perfect age. If your lordship will pursue them, and execute on them_
that, which for their disobedience they deserve, I will be your
guide, since at this present my fortune will not suffer me to
performe any more.

Presently the Governour, with thirty horsemen, and as
many footemen, went to seeke the Indians, and passing by
some townes of the principall Indians which had absented
themselves, hee cut and destroyed great fields of maiz, and
went up the river, where the Indians were in an island,
where the horsemen could not come at them. There he sent
them word by an Indian to returne to their towne, and feare
nothing, and that they should give him men to Carrie bur-
dens, as al those behind had done; for he would have no
Indian women, seeing they were so loth to part with them.
The Indians accepted his request, and came to the Gover-
nour to excuse themselves; and so all of them returned to
their towne.

A cacique of a province called Coste, came to this town to
visit the Governour. After hee had offered himselfe, and
passed with him some words of tendering his service and
curtesie, the Governour asking him whether he had notice of
any rich countrie? He said, Yea; to wit, that toward the
north there was a province named Chisca; and that there
was a melting of copper, and of another metall of the same
colour, save that it was finer, and of a farre more perfect
colour, and farre better to the sight, and that they used it
not so much, because it was softer. And the selfe same
thing was told the Governour in Cutifa-Chiqui, where
we saw some little hatchets of copper, which were said
to have a mixture of gold. But in that part the country
was not well peopled; and they said there were moun-
taines, which the horses could not passe; and for that
cause, the Governour would not goe from Cutifa-Chiqui
directly thither. And he made account, that travelling
through a peopled countrie, when his men and horses should
bee in better plight, and hee were better certified of the truth
of the thing, he would returne toward it by mountaines, and
a better inhabited countrie, whereby hee might have better
passage. He sent two Christians from Chiaha with certaine
Indians which knew the countrie of Chisca, and the language
thereof, to view it, and to make report of that which they
should find; where he told them that he would tarrie for
them.

CHAPTER XVI.

How the Governor departed from Chiaha, and at Coste was in danger to
have been slaine by the hands of the Indians, and by a stratageme
escaped the same; and what more happened unto him in this journie,
and how he came to Coçã.

When the Governour was determined to depart from
Chiaha to Coste, he sent for the cacique to come before him,
and with gentle words tooke his leave of him, and gave him
certaine things, wherewith he rested much contented. In
seven daies hee came to Coste. The second of Julie he com-
manded his campe to be pitched two crossebow shot from
the town, and with eight men of his guard he went where
he found the cacique, which to his thinking received him
with great love. As hee was talking with him, there went
from the campe certaine footemen to the towne to seeke
some maiz; and not contented with it, they ransacked and
searched the houses, and tooke what they found. With this
despite the Indians began to rise and to take their armes;
and some of them with cudgils in their hands, ran upon five
or sixe Christians which had done them wrong, and beat
them at their pleasure. The Governour seeing them al in
an uprøre, and himselfe among them with so few Christians,
to escape their hands used a stratagem, farre against his
owne disposition, being, as hee was, very francke and open;
and though it grieved him very much that any Indian should be so bold, as with reason, or without reason, to despise the Christians, he tooke up a cudgel, and tooke their parts against his owne men, which was a meanes to quiet them. And presently he sent word by a man very secretly to the campe, that some armed men should come toward the place where he was; and hee tooke the cacique by the hand, using very mild words unto him, and with some principall Indians that did accomanice him he drew them out of the towne into a plaine way, and unto the sight of the campe, whither by little and little with good discretion the Christians began to come and to gather about them. Thus the Governour led the cacique and his chiefe men untill he entred with them into the campe; and neere unto his tent hee commanded them to be put in safe custodie, and told them, that they should not depart without giving him a guide, and Indians for burthens, and till certaine sicke Christians were come, which he had commancted to come downe the river in canoes from Chiaha, and those also which he had sent to the province of Chisca (for they were not returned, and he feared that the Indians had slaine the one and the other). Within three daies after, those which were sent to Chisca returned, and made report, that the Indians had carried them through a countrie so poore of maiz, and so rough, and over so high mountaines, that it was impossible for the armie to travell that way; and that seeing the way grew very long, and that they lingered much, they consulted to returne from a little poore towne, where they saw nothing that was of any profit, and brought an oxe hide, which the Indians gave them, as thinne as a calves skinne, and the haire like a soft wooll, betweene the course and fine wooll of sheepe.¹ The cacique gave a guide, and men for burdens, and departed with the

¹ The 215th chapter of Lopez de Gomara’s Historia general de las Indias, 1554, referred to in the margin by Hakluyt, describes the vacas corcobadas, i.e. hump-backed oxen, which may be clearly identified with the bison.
Governour's leave. The Governour departed from Coste the ninth of Julie, and lodged at a towne called Tali. The cacique came forth to receive him on the way, and made this speech:

**Excellent lord and prince, worthie to be served and obeyed of all the princes in the world; howsoever for the most part by the outward physiognomie, the inward vertue may bee judged, and that who you are, and of what strength, was knowne unto mee before now: I will not inferre hereupon how meane I am in your presence, to hope that my poore ser-

vices will bee gratefull and acceptable, since whereas strength faileth, the will doth not cease to be praised and accepted. And for this cause I presume to request your lordship, that you will be pleased onely to respect the same, and consider wherein you will command my services in this your countrie.**

The Governour answered him, that his good will and offer was as acceptable unto him, as if he had offered him all the treasures of the world, and that he would alwaies intreate, favour, and esteeme him, as if he were his owne brother. The cacique commanded provision necessarie for two daies, while the Governour was there, to be brought thither; and at the time of his departure he gave him foure women and two men, which hee had neede of to beare burthenes.

The Governour travelled sixe daies through many townes subject to the cacique of Coça; and as he entred into his countrie, many Indians came unto him every day from the cacique, and met him on the way with messages, one going and another comming. Hee came to Coça upon Friday, the 26 of Julie. The cacique came forth to receive him two crossebow shot from the towne in a chaire, which his princi-
pall men carried on their shoulders, sitting upon a cushion, and covered with a garment of marterns, of the fashion and bignes of a woman's huke¹; hee had on his head a diadem of feathers, and round about him many Indians playing upon

¹ A kind of mantle, or cloak, worn in Spain and the Low Countries. Huque, Fr.; huca, low Latin. *Nares' Glossary.*
flutes, and singing. As soone as he came unto the Governour, he did his obeysance, and uttered these words following:

_Excellent and mightie lord, above all them of the earth_; although I come but now to receive you, yet I have received you manie daies afoe in my heart, to wit, from the day wherein I had first notice of your lordship; with so great desire to serve you, with so great pleasure and contentment, that this which I make shew of, is nothing in regard of that which is in my heart, neither can it have any kind of comparison. This you may hold for certaine, that to obteine the dominion of the whole world, would not have rejoysied me so much, as your sight, neither would I have held it for so great a felicitie. Doe not looke for me to offer you that which is your owne, to wit, my person, my lands, and subjects: onely I will busie my selfe in commanding my men with all diligence and due reverence to welcome you from hence to the towne with playing and singing, where your lordship shall be lodged and attended upon by my selfe and them: and all that I possesse, your lordship shall use as it were your owne. For your lordship shall doe me a verie great favour in so doing.

The Governour gave him thankes, and with great joy they both went conferring together, till they came to the towne; and he commanded his Indians to void their houses, wherein the Governor and his men were lodged. There was in the barnes, and in the fields, great store of maiz and french beanes. The country was greatly inhabited with many great townes, and many sowne fields, which reached from the one to the other. It was pleasant, fat, full of good meadows upon rivers. There were in the fields many plum trees, as well of such as grow in Spaine, as of the countrie, and wild tall vines, that runne up the trees; and besides these, there were other low vines, with big and sweet grapes; but for want of

---

1 Theodore Irving, in his Conquest of Florida, quoting Bancroft, says: “This is supposed to have been the same native grape, called the Isabella, which has since been cultivated.”
digging and dressing, they had great kirnels in them. The Governour used to set a guard over the caciques, because they should not abstain themselves, and carried them with him, till he came out of their countries; because that carrying them along with him, he looked to find people in the townes, and they gave him guides, and men to carry burdens; and before he went out of their countries, he gave them licence to returne to their houses, and to their porters likewise, as soone as he came to any other lordship, where they gave him others.

The men of Coça seeing their lord detained, tooke it in evil part, and revolted, and hid themselves in the woods, as well those of the towne of the cacique as those of the other townes of his principall subjects. The Governour sent out foure captaines, every one his way to seeke them. They tooke many men and women, which were put into chaines. They seeing the hurt which they received, and how little they gained in absenting themselves, came againe, promising to do whatsoever they were commanded. Of those which were taken prisoners, some principall men were set at libertie, whom the cacique demanded; and every one that had any, carried the rest in chaines like slaves, without letting them goe to their countrie; neither did any returne, but some few, whose fortune helped them with the good diligence which they used to file off their chaines by night, or such as in their travelling could slippe aside out of the way, seeing any negligence in them that kept them; some escaped away with the chaines, and with the burdens, and clothes which they carried.
A RELATION OF

CHAPTER XVII.

How the Governour went from Coça to Tascaluca.

The Governour rested in Coça twenty-five daies. He departed from thence the 20 of August, to seeke a province called Tascaluca: hee carried with him the cacique of Coça. He passed that day by a great towne called Tallimuchase, the people were fled: he lodged halfe a league further, neere a brooke. The next day he came to a towne called Ytava, subject to Coça. Hee staid there sixe daies because of a river that passed by it, which at that time was very hie; and as soone as the river suffered him to passe, he set forward, and lodged at a towne named Ullibahali. There came to him on the way, on the caciques behalfe of that province, ten or twelve principall Indians to offer him his service; all of them had their plumes of feathers, and bowes and arrowes. The Governour coming to the towne with twelve horsemen, and some footemen of his guard, leaving his people a crossebow shot from the towne, entered into it; hee found all the Indians with their weapons: and as farre as he could ghesse, they seemed to have some evill meaning. It was knowne afterward, that they were determined to take the cacique of Coça from the Governour, if hee had requested it. The Governour commanded all his people to enter the towne, which was walled about, and neere unto it passed a small river. The wall, as well of that, as of others, which afterward we saw, was of great posts thrust deepe into the ground and very rough, and many long railes as big as ones arme laid acrosse between them, and the wall was about the height of a lance, and it was daubed within and without with clay, and had loope holes. On the other side of the river was a towne, where at that present the cacique was. The Govern-
our sent to call him, and hee came presently. After he had passed with the Governour some words of offering his services, he gave him such men for his carriages as he needed, and thirte-women for slaves. In that place was a Christian lost called Mançano, borne in Salamanca, of noble parentage, which went astray to seeke for grapes, whereof there is great store, and those very good. The day that the Governour departed from thence, he lodged at a towne subject to the lord of Ulibahali: and the next day hee came to another towne, called Toasi. The Indians gave the Governour thirtie women, and such men for his carriages as he needed. Hee travelled ordinarily five or six leagues a day when he travelled through peopled countries: and going through deserts, he marched as fast as he could, to eschew the want of maiz.

From Toasi, passing through some townes subject to a cacique, which was lord of a province called Tallise, hee travelled five daies. He came to Tallise the 18 of September. The towne was great, and situated neere unto a maine river. On the other side of the river were other townes, and many fields sowne with maiz. On both sides it was a very plentiful countrie, and had store of maiz: they had voided the towne. The Governour commanded to call the cacique, who came, and betwene them passed some words of love and offer of his services, and hee presented unto him forty Indians. There came to the Governour in this towne a principall Indian in the behalfe of the cacique of Tascaluca, and made this speech following:

*Mightie, vertuous, and esteemed lord, the great cacique of Tascaluca, my lord, sendeth by me to kisse your lordships hands, and to let you understand, that he hath notice, how you justly ravish with your perfections and power all men on the earth; and that everie one by whom your lordship passeth doth serve and obey you; which he acknowledgeth to be due unto you, and desireth as his life, to see, and to serve your lordship. For which cause by me he offereth himselfe, his*
lands and subjects, that when your lordship pleaseth to go through his countrie, you may be received with all peace and love, served and obeyed; and that in recompense of the desire he hath to see you, you will doe him the favour to let him know when you will come: for how much the sooner, so much the greater favour he shall receive.

The Governour received and dispatched him graciously, giving him beades, which among them were not much esteemed, and some other things to carry to his lord. And he gave licence to the cacique of Coça to returne home to his owne countries. The cacique of Tallise gave him such men for burthens as he needed. And after he had rested there twenty daies, hee departed thence toward Tascaluca. That day when hee went from Tallise, hee lodged at a great towne called Casiste. And the next day passed by another, and came to a small towne of Tascaluca; and the next day hee camped in a wood two leagues from the towne where the cacique resided, and was at that time. And he sent the master of the campe, Luys de Moscoso, with fifteen horsemen, to let him know how hee was comming. The cacique was in his lodgings under a canopie: and without doores, right against his lodgings, in an high place, they spread a mat for him, and two cushions one upon another, where he sat him downe, and his Indians placed themselves round about him, somewhat distant from him, so that they made a place, and a void roome where he sate: and his chieuest men were neerest to him, and one with a shadow of deeres skinne, which kept the sunne from him, being round, and of the bignes of a target, quartered with black and white, having a rundell in the middest: a farre off it seemed to be of taffata, because the colours were very perfect. It was set on a smallstaffe stretched wide out. This was the device which hee carried in his warres. Hee was a man of very tall stature, of great limmes, and spare, and well

1 A rundle, or circle, from the Fr. rondelle, which in Cotgrave is described as "a buckler, or little target".
proportioned, and was much feared of his neighbours and subjects. He was lord of many territories and much people. In his countenance he was very grave. After the master of the campe had spoken with him, he and those that went with him coursed their horses, pransing them to and fro, and now and then toward the place where the cacique was, who with much gravitie and dissimulation now and then lifted up his eies, and beheld them as if it were with disdaine. At the Governours comning, hee made no offer at all to rise. The Governour tooke him by the hand, and both of them sat downe together on a seate which was under the cloth of estate. The cacique said these words unto him:

*Mighty lord, I bid your lordship right hartily welcome. I receive as much pleasure and contentment with your sight, as if you were my brother whom I dearely loved: upon this point it is not needfull to use many reasons; since it is no discretion to speake that in many worde which in few may be uttered. How much the greater the will is, so much more giveth it name to the workes, and the workes give testimonie of the truth. Now touching my will, by it you shall know, how certain and manifest it is, and how pure inclination I have to serue you. Concerning the favour which you did me, in the things which you sent me, I make as much account of them as is reason to esteeme them: and chiefly because they were yours. Now see what service you will command me.*

The Governour satisfied him with sweet words, and with great brevitie. When hee departed from thence, he determined to carry him along with him for some causes, and at two daies journie hee came to a towne called Piache, by which there passed a great river. The Governour demanded canoes of the Indians: they said, they had them not, but that they would make rafts of canes and drie timber, on which he might passe well enough. And they made them with all diligence and speed, and they governed them; and because
the water went very slow, the Governour and his people passed very well.

From the port de Spirito Santo to Apalache, which is about an hundred leagues, the Governour went from east to west; and from Apalache to Cutifa-Chiqui, which are four hundred and thirty leagues, from the south-west to the north-east: and from Cutifa-Chiqui to Xuala, which are about two hundred and fiftie leagues, from the south to the north; and from Xuala to Tascaluca, which are two hundred and fiftie leagues more, an hundred and ninetie of them he travelled from east to west, to wit, to the province of Coça: and the other sixty from Coça to Tascaluca, from the north to the south.

Having passed the river of Piache, a Christian went from his companie from thence to seeke a woman slave that was runne away from him, and the Indians either tooke him captive, or slue him. The Governour urged the cacique that he should give account of him, and threatened him, that if he were not found, he would never let him loose. The cacique sent an Indian from thence to Mavilla, whither they were travelling, which was a towne of a principall Indian and his subject, saying, that he sent him to advise them to make readie victuals, and men for carriages. But (as afterward appeared) hee sent him to assemble all the men of warre thither, that hee had in his countrie.

The Governour travelled three daies; and the third day he passed all day through a peopled countrie: and he came to Mavilla upon Monday the 18 of October. He went before the camp with fifteen horsemen and thirty footemen. And from the towne came a Christian, whom he had sent to the principall man three or foure daies before, because he should not absent himselfe, and also to learne in what sort the Indians were: who told him that hee thought they were in an evill purpose: for while hee was there, there came manie people into the towne, and many weapons, and that they
made great haste to fortifie the wall. Luys de Moscoço told the Governour, that it would bee good to lodge in the field, seeing the Indians were of such disposition: and hee answered, that he would lodge in the towne, for hee was weari of lodging in the field. When hee came neere unto the towne, the cacique came foorth to receive him, with many Indians playing upon flutes and singing: and after hee had offered himselfe, hee presented him with three mantles of marterns. The Governour, with both the caciques, and seven or eight men of his guard, and three or foure horsemen, which alighted to accompanie him, entred into the towne, and sat him downe under a cloth of estate. The cacique of Tascaluca requested him, that hee would let him remaine in that towne, and trouble him no more with travelling: and seeing he would not give him leave, in his talke he changed his purpose, and dissemblinglie fained that he would speake with some principall Indians, and rose up from the place where hee sate with the Governour, and entred into a house, where many Indians were with their bowes and arrowes. The Governour when he saw he returned not, called him, and he answered, that he would not come out from thence, neither would he goe any farther then that towne, and that if he would goe his way in peace, hee should presently depart, and should not seeke to carrie him perforce out of his coutrie and territorie.
CHAPTER XVIII.

How the Indians rose against the Governour, and what ensued thereupon.

The Governour seeing the determination and furious answere of the cacique, went about to pacifie him with faire words; to which he gave no answere, but rather with much pride and disdain withdrew himselfe where the Governour might not see him, nor speake with him. As a principall Indian passed that way, the Governor called him, to send him word that hee might remaine at his pleasure in his countrie, and that it would please him to give him a guide, and men for carriages, to see if hee could pacifie him with mild words. The Indian answered with great pride, that hee would not hearken unto him. Baltasar de Gallegos, which stood by, tooke hold of a gowne of marterns which hee had on, and hee cast it over his head and left it in his hands; and because all of them immediately began to stirre, Baltasar de Gallegos gave him such a wound with his coutilas, that hee opened him downe the backe, and presently all the Indians with a great crye came out of the houses shooting their arrowes. The Governour considering that if hee tarried there, hee could not escape, and if hee commanded his men to come in, which were without the towne, the Indians within the houses might kill their horses, and doe much hurt, ranne out of the towne; and before hee came out, hee fell twice or thrice, and those that were with him did helpe him up againe; and he and those that were with him were sore wounded; and in a moment there were five Christians slaine in the towne. The Governour came running out of the towne, crying out, that every man should stand farther off, because from the wall they did them much hurt. The Indians seeing that the Christians retired, and some of them, or the most part, more
then an ordinary pase, shot with great boldnesse at them, and strooke downe such as they could overtake. The Indians which the Christians did lead with them in chaines, had laid downe their burthens neere unto the wall; and as soone as the Governour and his men were retired, the men of Mavilla laid them on the Indians backs againe, and tooke them into the towne, and loosed them presently from their chaines, and gave them bowes and arrowes to fight withall. Thus they possessed themselves of al the clothes and perles, and all that the Christians had, which their slaves carried. And because the Indians had been alwaies peaceable untill wee came to this place, some of our men had their weapons in their fardels\(^1\) and remained unarmed. And from others that had entred the towne with the Governour, they had taken swords and halebards, and fought with them. When the Governour was gotten into the field, hee called for an horse, and with some that accompanied him, hee returned and slew two or three Indians. All the rest retired themselves to the towne, and shot with their bowes from the wall. And those which presumed of their nimblenes, sallied foorth to fight a stones cast from the wall; and when the Christians charged them, they retired themselves at their leasure into the towne. At the time that the broile began, there were in the towne a frier and a priest, and a servant of the Governour, with a woman slave; and they had no time to come out of the towne; and they tooke an house, and so remained in the towne.

The Indians being become masters of the place, they shut the doore with a field gate; and among them was one sword which the Governour's servant had, and with it he set himselfe behind the door, thrusting at the Indians which sought to come into them; and the frier and the priest stood on the other side, each of them with a barre in their hands to beate him downe that first came in. The Indians seeing they could not get in by the doore, began to uncover the house

\(^1\) The bundles, or packs, which each man carried.
top. By this time, all the horsemen and footemen which were behind, were come to Mavilla. Here there were sundrie opinions, whether they should charge the Indians, to enter the towne, or whether they should leave it, because it was hard to enter: and in the end it was resolved to set upon them.

CHAPTER XIX.

How the Governour set his men in order, and entred the towne of Mavilla.

As soone as the battell and the rereward were come to Mavilla, the Governour commanded all those that were best armed to alight, and make foure squadrons of footmen. The Indians, seeing how he was setting his men in order, concluded with the cacique, that hee should goe his way, saying unto him, as after it was knowne by certaine women that were taken there, that he was but one man, and could fight but for one man, and that they had there among them many principall Indians verie valiant and expert in feates of armes, that any one of them was able to order the people there; and forasmuch as matters of warre were subject to casualtie, and it was uncertaine which part should overcome, they wished him to save himselfe, to the end that if it fel out that they should end their daies there, as they determined, rather then to be overcome, there might remaine one to governe the countrie. For all this hee would not have gon away: but they urged him so much, that with fiftenee or twentie Indians of his owne, hee went out of the towne, and carried away a skarlat cloke, and other things of the Christians goods; as much as hee was able to carrie, and seemed best unto him. The Governour was informed how there went men out of the towne, and hee commanded the horsemen to beset it, and
sent in every squadron of footemen one souldier with a fire-brand to set fire on the houses, that the Indians might have no defense. All his men being set in order, hee commanded an harcubuz to bee shot off. The signe being given, the foure squadrons, every one by itselfe with great furie, gave the onset, and with great hurt on both sides they entred the towne. The frier and the priest, and those that were with them in the house were saved, which cost the lives of two men of account and valiant, which came thither to succour them. The Indians fought with such courage, that many times they drave our men out of the towne. The fight lasted so long, that for wearinesse and great thirst many of the Christians went to a poole that was neere the wal, to drink, which was all stained with blood of the dead, and then came againe to fight. The Governour seeing this, entered among the footemen into the towne on horseback, with certaine that accompanied him, and was a meane that the Christians came to set fire on the houses, and brake and overcame the Indians, who running out of the towne from the footemen, the horsemen without drave in at the gates again, where being without all hope of life, they fought valiantly, and after the Christians came among them to handy blows, seeing themselves in great distresse without any succour, many of them fled into the burning houses, where one upon another they were smothered and burnt in the fire.

The whole number of the Indians that died in this town, were two thousand and five hundred, little more or lesse. Of the Christians there died eighteen; of which one was Don Carlos, brother-in-law to the Governour, and a nephew of his, and one John de Games, and Men Rodrigues, Portugals, and John Vasquez de Villanova de Barca Rota, all men of honour, and of much valour: the rest were footmen. Besides those that were slaine, there were an hundred and fiftie wounded with 700 wounds of their arrowes: and it pleased God that of very dangerous wounds they were quickly healed.
Moreover, there were twelve horses slaine, and seventie hurt. All the clothes which the Christians carried with them to clothe themselves withall, and the ornaments to say masse, and the perles, were all burnt there: and the Christians did set them on fire themselves, because they held for a greater inconvenience the hurt which the Indians might doe them from those houses, where they had gathered all those goods together, then the losse of them. Here the Governour understood that Francisco Maldonado waited for him at the port of Ochuse, and that it was sixe daies journie from thence; and he dealt with John Ortiz to keepe it secret, because he had not accomplished that which he determined to doe, and because the perles were burnt there, which he meant to have sent to Cuba for a shew, that the people, hearing the newes, might be desirous to come to that countrie. He feared also, that if they should have newes of him without seeing from Florida neither gold, nor silver, nor anything of value, it would get such a name, that no man would seeke to goe thither, when he should have neede of people. And so he determined to send no newes of himselfe, untill hee had found some rich countrie.

CHAPTER XX.

How the Governour departed from Mavilla toward Chicapa, and what happened unto him.

From the time that the Governour entred into Florida, untill his departure from Mavilla, there died an hundred and two Christians, some of sickness, and others which the Indians slew. Hee staid in Mavilla, because of the wounded men, eight and twentie daies; all which time he lay in the field. It was a well inhabited and a fat countrie: there were
some great and walled townes; and many houses scattered all about the fields, to wit, a crossebow shot or two the one from the other. Upon Sonday the 18th of November, when the hurt men were knowne to bee healed, the Governour departed from Mavilla. Every one furnished himselfe with maiz for two daies, and they travelled five daies through a desert: they came to a province called Pasallaya, unto a towne, named Taliepatava; and from thence they went to another, called Cabusto: neere unto it ran a great river. The Indians on the other side cried out, threatening the Christians to kill them, if they sought to passe it. The Governour commanded his men to make a barge within the towne, because the Indians should not perceive it: it was finished in foure daies; and being ended, he commanded it to be carried one night upon sleds halfe a league up the river. In the morning there entred into it thirtie men well armed. The Indians perceived what was attempted, and those which were neerest came to defend the passage. They resisted what they could, till the Christians came neere them; and seeing that the barge came to the shore, they fled away into the groves of canes.

The Christians mounted on horseback, and went up the river to make good the passage, whereby the Governour and his companie passed the river. There were along the river some townes well stored with maiz and french beanes. From thence to Chicaça the Governour travelled five daies through a desert. Hee came to a river, where on the other side were Indians to defend the passage. He made another barge in two daies; and when it was finished, the Governour sent an Indian to request the cacique to accept of his friendship, and peaceably to expect his comming, whom the Indians that were on the other side the river slew before his face, and presently, making a great shout, went their way.

Having passed the river, the next day, being the 17th of December, the Governour came to Chicaça, a small towne of Chicaça.
twentie houses. And after they were come to Chicaça, they were much troubled with cold, because it was now winter and it snowed, while most of them were lodged in the field, before they had time to make themselves houses. This countrie was very well peopled, and the houses scattered like those of Mavilla, fat and plenfull of maiz, and the most part of it was fielding: they gathered as much as sufficed to passe the winter. Some Indians were taken, among which was one whom the cacique esteemed greatly. The Governour sent an Indian to signifie to the cacique that he desired to see him, and to have his friendship. The cacique came unto him to offer his person, countrie, and subjects, and told him that he would cause two other caciques to come to him in peace; who, within few daies after, came with him, and with their Indians: the one was called Alimamu, the other Nicalasa. They gave a present unto the Governour of an hundred and fiftie conies, and of the countrie garments, to wit, of mantles and skinnes. The cacique of Chicaça came to visit him many times; and sometimes the Governour sent to call him, and sent him an horse to goe and come. He complained unto him, that a subject of his was risen against him, and deprived him of his tribute, requesting his aide against him, for hee meant to seeke him in his countrie, and to punish him according to his desert; which was nothing els but a fained plot. For they determined, as soone as the Governour was gone with him, and the campe was divided into two parts, the one part of them to set upon the Governour, and the other upon them that remained in Chicaça. Hee went to the towne where he used to keep his residence, and brought with him two hundred Indians with their bowes and arrowes. The Governour tooke thirteene horsemen and eightie footemen, and they went to Saquechuma (for so was the province called of that chiefe man, which he said had rebelled): they found a walled town, without any men; and those which went with the cacique set fire on the houses, to dissemble their treason. But by
reason of the great care and heedfulness, that was as well in the Governour's people which hee carried with him, as of those which remained in Chicaça, they durst not assault them at that time. The Governour invited the cacique, and certaine principall Indians, and gave them hoggges flesh to eate. And though they did not commonly use it, yet they were so greedie of it, that every night there came Indians to certaine houses a crossebow shot from the camp, where the hoggges lay, and killed and carried away as many as they could. And three Indians were taken in the manner. Two of them the Governor commanded to be shot to death with arrowes; and to cut off the hands of the other; and he sent him so handled to the cacique, who made as though it grieved him that they had offended the Governour, and that he was glad that he had executed that punishment on them. He lay in a plaine countrie halfe a league from the place where the Christians lodged. Four horsemen went a stragling thither, to wit, Francisco Osorio, and a servant of the Marques of Astorga, called Reynoso, and two servants of the Governour, the one his page, called Ribera, and the other, Fuentes his chamberlaine: and these had taken from the Indians some skinnes, and some mantles, wherewith they were offended, and forsooke their houses. The Governour knew of it, and commanded them to bee apprehended; and condemned to death Francisco Osorio and the chamberlaine, as principals; and all of them to losse of goods. The friers and priests, and other principall persons, were earnest with him to pardon Francisco Osorio his life, and to moderate his sentence; which hee would not grant for any of them. While he was readie to command them to be drawne to the market-place to cut off their heads, there came certaine Indians from the cacique to complaine of them. John Ortiz, at the request of Baltasar de Gallegos and other persons, changed their words, and told the Governour, that the cacique said, he had notice how his lordship held those Christians in prison for his sake, and that
they were in no fault, neither had they done him any wrong, and that if he would do him any favour, he should set them free. And he told the Indians, that the Governour said, he had them in prison, and that he would punish them in such sort, that they should bee an example to others. Hereupon the Governour commanded the prisoners to be loosed. As soone as March was come, hee determined to depart from Chicaça, and demanded of the cacique two hundred men for cariages. He sent him answere, that hee would speake with his principall men.

March 1541. Upon Twesday the eight of March, the Governour went to the towne where he was, to aske him for the men. Hee told him, he would send them the next day. As soone as the Governour was come to Chicaça, he told Luys de Moscoso, the camp master, that he disliked the Indians, and that he should keepe a strong watch that night, which hee remembred but a little. The Indians came at the second watch in foure squadrons, every one by itselfe; and as soone as they were descried, they sounded a drum, and gave the assault with a great cry, and with so great celeritie, that presently they entred with the scoutes, that were somewhat distant from the campe. And when they were perceived of them which were in the towne, halfe the houses were on fire, which they had kindled. That night three horsemen chanced to bee skouts; two of them were of base calling, and the worst men in all the camp, and the other, which was a nephew of the Governour, which untill then was held for a tall man, shewed himselfe there as great a coward as any of them: for all of them ran away. And the Indians without any resistance came and set the towne on fire; and taried without behind the doores for the Christians, which ran out of the houses, not having any leasure to arme themselves; and as they ran hither and thither, amazed with the noise, and blinded with the smoke and flame of the fire, they knew not which way they went, neither could they light upon their weapons, nor saddle their horses,
neither saw they the Indians that shot at them. Manie of
the horses were burned in the stables, and those which could
breake their halters got loose. The disorder and flight was
such, that every man fled which way he could, without leaving
any to resist the Indians. But God (which chastiseth his according to His pleasure, and in the greatest necessities
and dangers sustaineth them with His hand) so blinded the
Indians, that they saw not what they had done, and thought
that the horses which ran loose were men on horseback,
that gathered themselves together to set upon them. The
Governour only rod on horsebacke, and with him a soldier
called Tapia, and set upon the Indians; and striking the first
he met with his lance, the saddle fell with him, which with
haste was evill girded, and so hee fell from his horse. And
all the people that were on foote were fled to a wood out of
the towne, and there assembled themselves together. And
because it was night, and that the Indians thought the horses
were men on horsebacke which came to set upon them, as I
said before, they fled; and one onely remained dead, and
that was he whom the Governour slew with his lance. The
towne lay all burnt to ashes. There was a woman burned,
who, after shee and her husband were both gone out of their
house, went in againe for certaine perles, which they had
forgotten; and when she would have come out, the fire was
so great at the doore that shee could not, neither could her
husband succour her. Other three Christians came out of
their lodgings so cruelly burned, that one of them died within
three daies, and the other two were carried many daies each
of them upon a couch betweene staves, which the Indians car-
ried on their shoulders, for otherwise they could not travell.
There died in this hurliburlie eleven Christians, and fiftie
horses; and there remained an hundred hogges, and foure
hundred were burned. If any perchance had saved any
clothes from the fire of Mavilla, here they were burned, and
many were clad in skinnes, for they had no leasure to take
their coates. They endured much cold in this place, and the chiefest remedie were great fires. They spent all night in turnings without sleepe: for if they warmed one side, they freesed on the other. Some invented the weaving of certaine mats of drie ivie, and did weare one beneath, and another above: many laughed at this device, whom afterward necessity inforced to doe the like. The Christians were so spoiled, and in such want of saddles and weapons which were burned, that if the Indians had come the second night, they had overcome them with little labour. Theyemooved thence to the towne where the cacique was wont to lie, because it was in a champion\textsuperscript{1} countrie. Within eight daies after, there were many lances and saddles made. There were ash trees in those parts, whereof they made as good lances as in Biscay.

\textbf{CHAPTER XXI.}

\textit{How the Indians set againe upon the Christians, and how the Governour went to Alimamu, beyond which towne in warlike sort they tarried for him in the way.}

Upon Wednesday, the 15 of March 1541, after the Governour had lodged eight daies in a plaine, halfe a league from the place which he had wintered in, after he had set up a forge, and tempered the swords which in Chicaça were burned, and made many targets, saddles, and lances, on Tuesday night, at the morning watch, many Indians came to assault the campe in three squadrons, every one by themselves. Those which watched gave the alarme. The Governour with great speed set his men in order in other three squadrons, and leaving some to defend the campe, went out to incounter them. The Indians were overcome and put to

\textsuperscript{1} Champaign.
flight. The ground was champion and fit for the Christians to take the advantage of them; and it was now breake of day. But there happened a disorder, whereby there were not past thirtie or fortie Indians slaine; and this it was, that a frier cried out in the campe without any just occasion, *To the campe, To the campe*; whereupon the Governour and all the rest repaired thither, and the Indians had time to save themselves. There were some taken, by whom the Governour informed himselfe of the countrie through which he was to passe.

The 25 of April he departed from Chicaça, and lodged at a small towne called Alimamu. They had very little maiz, and they were to passe a desert of seven daies journie. The next day, the Governour sent three captaines, everie one his way, with horsemen and footemen, to seeke provision to passe the desert. And John Dannusco, the auditor, went with fifteene horsemen and forty footemen that way that the Governour was to goe, and found a strong fort made, where the Indians staied for him, and many of them walked on the top of it with their weapons, having their bodies, thighs, and armes, okered and died with blacke, white, yellow, and red, striped like unto panes, so that they shewed as though they went in hose and doublets; and some of them had plumes, and others had hornes on their heads, and their faces blacke, and their eies done round about with strakes of red, to seeme more fierce. As soone as they saw that the Christians approchted, with a great crie, sounding two drummes with great furie, they sallied forth to receive them. John Dannusco, and those that were with him, thought good to avoid them, and to acquaint the Governour therewith. They retired to a plaine place, a crossebow shot from the fort in sight of it, the footemen, the crossebowmen, and targetters, placed themselves before the horsemen, that they might not hurt the horses. The Indians sallied out by seven and seven, and eight and eight, to shoote their arrowes, and retired
againe; and in sight of the Christians they made a fire, and tooke an Indian, some by the feete, and some by the head, and made as though they went to cast him into the fire, and gave him first many knocks on the head; signifying, that they meant so to handle the Christians. John Danusco sent three horsemen to advertise the Governour hereof. He came presently; for his intent was to drive them from thence; saying, that if he did it not, they would be emboldned to charge him another time, when they might doe him more harme. He made the horsemen to alight, and set his men in four squadrons; the signe being given, they set upon the Indians, which made resistance till the Christians came neere the fort, and as soone as they saw they could not defend themselves, by a place where a brooke passed neere the fort, they ran away, and from the other side they shot some arrowes; and because at that instant we knew no ford for the horses to passe, they had time enough to get out of our danger. Three Indians were slaine there, and many Christians were hurt, whereof within few daies there died fiftene by the way.

All men thought the Governour to bee in fault, because he sent not to see the disposition of the place on the other side of the river, and to know the passage before hee set upon them. For with the hope they had to save themselves by flight that way, when they saw none other meanes, they fought till they were broken, and it was an incouragement to defend themselves untill then, and to offend the Christians without any danger to themselves.
CHAPTER XXII.

How the Governour went from Alimamu to Quizquis, and from thence to Rio Grande, or the Great River.

Three daies after they had sought some maiz, whereof they found but little store, in regard of that which was needfull, and that for this cause, as well for their sakes that were wounded, it was needfull for them to rest, as for the great journie they were to march to come where store of maiz was; yet the Governour was inforced to depart presentlie toward Quizquiz. He travelled seven daies through a desert of many marishes and thicke woods; but it might all be travelled on horseback, except some lakes, which they swamme over. Hee came to a towne of the province of Quizquiz without being descried, and tooke all the people in it before they came out of their houses. The mother of the cacique was taken there; and he sent unto him by an Indian, that he should come to see him, and that he would give him his mother, and al the people which he had taken there. The cacique sent him answere againe, that his lordship should loose and send them to him, and that he would come to visit and serve him. The Governour, because his people for want of maiz were somewhat weake and wearie, and the horses also were leane, determined to accomplish his request, to see if hee could have peace with him, and so commanded to set free his mother and all the rest, and with loving words dismissed them, and sent them to him.

The next day, when the Governour expected the cacique, there came many Indians with their bowes and arrowes, with a purpose to set upon the Christians. The Governor had commanded all the horsemen to be armed, and on horsebacke, and in a readines. When the Indians saw that they were readie, they staied a crossebow shot from the place where
the Governour was, neere a brooke. And after halfe an
houre that they had stood there stil, there came to the camp
sixe principall Indians, and said, they came to see what
people they were; and that long agoe they had been in-
fomed by their forefathers, that a white people should sub-
due them; and that therefore they would returne to their
cacique, and bid him come presently to obey and serve the
Governour: and after they had presented him with sixe or
seven skinnes and mantles which they brought, they tooke
their leave of him, and returned with the other, which waited
for them by the brooke's side. The cacique never came
againe nor sent other message.

And because in the towne where the Governour lodged
there was small store of maiz, he remooved to another halfe
a league from Rio Grande, where they found plentie of maiz.
And he went to see the river, and found that neere unto it
was great store of timber to make barges, and good situa-
tion of ground to incampe in. Presently he remooved him-
selbe thither. They made houses, and pitched their camp
in a plaine field a crossebow shot from the river. And thither
was gathered all the maiz of the townes which they had latelie
passed. They began presently to cut and hew down timber,
and to saw plankes for barges. The Indians came presently
down the river; they leaped on shore, and declared to the
Governour, that they were subjects of a great lord, whose
name was Aquixo, who was lord of many townes, and
governed many people on the other side of the river, and
came to tell him on his behalfe, that the next day he with
al his men would come to see what it would please him to
command him.

1 The Mississippi, the great river here referred to, is rightly called by
Hakluyt in his marginal note Rio de Espiritu Santo, as is proved by col-
lletion with Biedma's account in the appendix to the present work. This
name is applied to the Mississippi in Ogilby's map of America, 1671;
but in the later Dutch maps was transferred erroneously to the river
Apalachicola.
The next day with speed, the cacique came with two hundred canoes full of Indians with their bowes and arrowes, painted, and with great plumes of white feathers, and many other colours, with shields in their hands, wherewith they defended the rowers on both sides, and the men of warre stood from the head to the sterne, with their bowes and arrowes in their hands. The canoe wherein the cacique was, had a tilt over the sterne, and hee sate under the tilt; and so were other canoes of the principall Indians. And from under the tilt where thechiefe man sat, hee governed and commanded the other people. All joyned together, and came within a stones cast of the shore. From thence the cacique said to the Governour, which walked along the rivers side with others that waited on him, that he was come thither to visit, to honour, and to obey him; because he knew he was the greatest and mightiest lord on the earth: therefore he would see what he would command him to doe. The Governour yeelded him thankes, and requested him to come on shore, that they might the better communicate together. And without any answere to that point, hee sent him three canoes, wherein was great store of fish, and loaves made of the substance of prunes,\(^2\) like unto brickes. After he had received all, he thanked him, and prayed him againe to come on shore. And because the caciques purpose was, to see if with dissimulation he might doe some hurt, when they saw that the Governour and his men were in readinesse, they began to goe from the shore; and with a great crie, the crossebowmen which were ready, shot at them, and slue five or sixe of them. They retired with great order; none did leave his oare, though the next to him were slaine; and shielding themselves, they went farther off. Afterward they came many times and landed: and when any of us came toward them, they fled unto their canoes, which were very pleasant to behold; for they were very great and well made,

---

\(^1\) An awning or canopy.  \(^2\) The persimon—*diospyros Virginiana.*
and had their tilts, plumes, paveses, and flagges, and with the multitude of people that were in them, they seemed to be a faire armie of gallies. In thirtie daies space, while the Governour remained there, they made four barges: in three of which hee commanded twelve horsemen to enter, in each of them four; in a morning, three hours before day, men which hee trusted would land in despight of the Indians, and make sure the passage, or die, and some footmen being crossebowmen went with them, and rowers to set them on the other side. And in the other barge, he commanded John de Guzman to passe with the footmen, which was made captaine instead of Francisco Maldonado. And because the streame was swift, they went a quarter of a league up the river along the bancke, and crossing over, fell downe with the streame, and landed right over against the camp. Two stones-cast before they came to land, the horsemen went out of the barges on horsebacke to a sandie plot of very hard and cleere ground, where all of them landed without any resistance. As soone as those that passed first were on land on the other side, the barges returned to the place where the Governour was: and within two hours after sunne-rising, all the people were over. The river was almost halfe a league broad. If a man stood still on the other side, it could not be discerned whether he were a man or no. The river was of great depth, and of a strong current; the water was alwaies muddie: there came downe the river continually many trees and timber, which the force of the water and streame brought downe. There was great store of fish in it of sundrie sorts, and the most of it differing from the freshwater fish of Spaine, as hereafter shall be shewed.

1 Waste cloths which hung round about the ship to hinder men from being seen in the fight: literally, shields or bucklers.
CHAPTER XXIII.

How the Governour departed from Aquixo to Casqui, and from thence to Pacaha: and how this contrie differeth from that which we had passed.

Having passed Rio Grande, the Governour travelled a league and an halfe, and came to a great towne of Aquixo, which was dispeopled before hee came thither. They espied thirtie Indians comming over a plaine, which the cacique sent to discover the Christians determination: and as soone as they had sight of them, they tooke themselves to flight. The horsemen pursued them, and slue tenne, and tooke fifteene. And because the towne, whither the Governour went, was neere unto the river, he sent a captaine, with as many men as he thought sufficient to carrie the barges up the river. And because in his travelling by land many times he went farre from the river to compass the creekes that came from it, the Indians tooke occasion to set upon them of the barges, and put them in great danger, because that by reason of the great current, they durst not leave the shore, and from the bancke they shot at them. As soone as the Governour was come to the towne, hee presently sent crossebow men downe the river, which came to rescue them: and upon the comming of the barges to the towne, hee commanded them to bee broken, and to save the iron for others, when it should bee needfull. Hee lay there one night, and the day following hee set forward to seeke a province called Pacaha, which hee was informed to bee neere unto Chisca, where the Indians told him there was gold. He passed through great townes of Aquixo, which were all abandoned for feare of the Christians. Hee understood by certaine Indians that were taken, that three daies journie from thence dwelt a great
cacique, whose name was Casqui. He came to a small river, where a bridge was made, by which they passed: that day till sunset they went all in water, which in some places came to the waste, and in some to the knees. When they saw themselves on dry land, they were very glad, because they feared they should wander up and downe as forlorn men all night in the water.

At noone they came to the first towne of Casqui: they found the Indians careless, because they had no knowledge of them. There were many men and women taken, and store of goods, as mantles and skinnes, as well in the first towne, as in another, which stood in a field halfe a league from thence in sight of it, whither the horsemen ran. This countrie is higher, drier, and more champion, then any part bordering neere the river, that untill then they had seen.

There were in the fields many walnut trees, bearing soft shelled walnuts, in fashion like bullets; and in the houses they found many of them, which the Indians had laid up in store. The trees differed in nothing else from those of Spaine, nor from those which we had seen before, but onely that they had a smaller leaf. There were many mulberry trees and plum trees, which bare red plums like those of Spaine, and other gray, somewhat differing, but farre better. And all the trees are all the yeare so fruitfull, as if they were planted in orchards: and the woods were verie thinne. The Governour travelled two daies through the countrie of Casqui, before hee came to the towne where the cacique was: and the most of the way was alway by champion ground, which was full of great townes; so that from one towne, you might see two or three. He sent an Indian to certifie the cacique, that hee was comming to the place where hee was, with intent to procure his friendship, and to hold him as his brother.

Whereunto he answered, that he should be welcome, and

\[\text{1 The pecan nut—}juglans\text{ oliveformis} \text{ of Michaux.}\]
that he would receive him with speciall good wil, and accomplish all that his lordship would command him. Hee sent him a present upon the way; to wit, skinnes, mantles, and fish. And after these compliments, the Governour found all the townes, as he passed, inhabited with people, which peaceablelie attended his comming, and offered him skinnes, mantles, and fish. The cacique, accompanied with many Indians, came out of the towne, and staied halfe a league on the way to receive the Governour; and when hee came to him, he spake these words following:

Right high, right mighty, and renowned lord, your lordship is most hartite welcome. As soone as I had notice of your lordship, of your power, and your perfections, although you came into my countrie, killing and taking captives the inhabitants thereof and my subjects: yet I determined to conforme my will unto yours, and as your owne to interpret in good part all that your lordship did: beleeving that it was convenient it should be so for some just respect, to prevent some future matter revealed unto your lordship, and concealed from me. For well may a mischiefe be permitted to avoid a greater, and that good may come thereof: which I believe will so fall out. For it is no reason to presume of so excellent a prince, that the noblenesse of his heart and the effect of his will would permit him to suffer any unjust thing. My abilitie is so small to serve you as your lordship deserveth, that if you respect not mine abundant good will, which humble offereth all kind of service, I deserve but little in your presence. But if it bee reason that this be esteemed, receive the same, my selfe; my countrie, and subjects for yours, and dispose of me and them at your pleasure. For if I were lord of all the world, with the same good will should your lordship by me be received, served, and obeyed.

The Governour answered him to the purpose, and satisfied him in few words. Within a while after, both of them used words of great offers and courtesie the one to the other, and
the cacique requested him to lodge in his houses. The Governour, to preserve the peace the better, excused himself, saying, that he would lodge in the fields. And because it was very hot, they camped neere certaine trees a quarter of a league from the towne. The cacique went to his towne, and came againe with many Indians singing. As soone as they came to the Governour, all of them prostrated themselves upon the ground. Among these came two Indians that were blind. The cacique made a speech: to avoid tediousnesse, I will onely tell in few words the substance of the matter. Hee said, that seeing the Governour was the sonne of the sunne, and a great lord, he besought him to doe him the favour to give sight to those two blind men. The blind men rose up presently, and very earnestly requested the same of the Governour. He answered, that in the high heavens was He that had power to give them health, and whatsoever they could aske of Him; whose servant he was. And that this Lord made the heavens and the earth, and man after His owne likenesse, and that He suffered upon the crosse to save mankind, and rose againe the third day; and that He died as He was man; and as touching His divinitie, He was, and is immortall; and that He ascended into heaven, where He standeth with His armes open to receive all such as turne unto Him. And straightway he commanded him to make a verie high crosse of wood, which was set up in the highest place of the towne; declaring unto him, that the Christians worshipped the same, in resemblance and memorie of that whereon Christ suffered. The Governour and his men kneeled downe before it, and the Indians did the like. The Governour willed him, that from thenceforth hee should worship the same, and should aske whatsoever they stoode in need of, of that Lord that he told him was in heaven. Then he asked him how far it was from thence to Pacaha. He said, one daies journie; and at the end of his countrie, there was a lake like a brooke, which falleth into Rio Grande, and
that hee would send men before to make a bridge whereby he might passe.

The same day that the Governour departed thence, he lodged at a towne belonging to Casqui: and the next day hee passed in sight of other townes, and came to the lake, which was halfe a crossebow shot over, of a great depth and current. At the time of his comming, the Indians had made an end of the bridge, which was made of timber, laid one tree after another: and on one side it had a course of stakes higher then the bridge, for them that passed to take hold on. The cacique of Casqui came to the Governour, and brought his people with him. The Governour sent word by an Indian to the cacique of Pacaha, that though hee were enemie to the cacique of Casqui, and though hee were there, yet he would doe him no disgrace nor hurt, if he would attend him peaceable, and embrace his friendship; but rather would intreate him as a brother. The Indian, which the Governour sent, came againe, and said, that the cacique made none account of that which hee told him, but fled with all his men out at the other side of the towne. Presentlie the Governour entred, and ran before with the horsemen that way by which the Indians fled; and at another towne distant a quarter of a league from thence, they tooke many Indians: and as soone as the horsemen had taken them, they delivered them to the Indians of Casqui, whom, because they were their enemies, with much circumspection and rejoicing they brought to the towne where the Christians were: and the greatest grief they had, was this, that they could not get leave to kill them. There were found in the towne many mantles, and deere skinnes, lions skins, and beares skinnes, and many cats skins. Many came so farre poorely apparralled, and there they clothed themselves: of the mantles, they made them cotes and cassocks, and some made gownes, and lined them with

1 Most probably puma skins (*felis concolor*), there being no lions in North America.
cats skins; and likewise their cassocks. Of the deeres skinnes, some made them also jerkins, shirts, hose, and shooes: and of the beare skinnes, they made them verie good clokes: for no water could pierce them. There were targets of raw oxe hides found there, with which hides they armed their horses.

CHAPTER XXIV.

How the cacique of Pacaha came peaceablie to the Governour, and the cacique of Caqui absent himselfe, and came againe to make his excuse; and how the Governour made them both friends.

Upon Wednesday, the 19 of June, the Governour entred into Pacaha. He lodged in the towne, where the cacique used to reside, which was very great, walled, and beset with towers, and many loopeholes were in the towers and wall. And in the towne was great store of old maiz, and great quantitie of new in the fields. Within a league and halfe a league were great townes all walled. Where the Governour was lodged, was a great lake, that came neere unto the wall; and it entred into a ditch that went round about the towne, wanting but a little to environ it round. From the lake to the great river was made a weare, by the which the fish came into it, which the cacique kept for his recreation and sport: with nets, that were found in the towne, they tooke as much as they would; and tooke they never so much, there was no want perceived. There was also great store of fish in many other lakes that were thereabout, but it was soft, and not so good as that which came from the river, and the most of it was different from the fresh-water fish of Spaine. There was a fish which they call bagres: the third part of it was head,

1 The cat-fish of the Mississippi—_silurus Mississippiensis_.

Pacaha, a very great town with towers.

Great walled townes.

Nets found.

The divers sorts of excellent fish in Rio Grande.
and it had on both sides the gilles, and along the sides great pricks like very sharpe aules: those of this kind that were in the lakes were as big as pikes: and in the river, there were some of an hundred, and of an hundred and fiftie pounds weight, and many of them were taken with the hooke. There was another fish like barbilles; and another like breames, headed like a delicate fish, called in Spaine besugo, betweene red and gray. This was there of most esteeme. There was another fish, called a pele fish: it had a snout of a cubit long, and at the end of the upper lip it was made like a peele. There was another fish like a westerne shad: and all of them had scales, except the bagres, and the pele fish. There was another fish, which sometimes the Indians brought us, of the bignes of an hog; they called it the pereo fish: it had rowes of teeth beneath and above. The cacique of Casqui sent many times great presents of fish, mantles, and skinnes. Hee told the Governour, that he would deliver the cacique of Pacaha into his hands. He went to Casqui, and sent many canoes up the river, and came himselfe by land with many of his people. The Governour with forty horsemen and sixty footemen, tooke him along with him up the river. And his Indians which were in the canoes, discovered where the cacique of Pacaha was in a little island, situated betwene two armes of the river. And five Christians entred into a canoe wherein Don Antonio Osorio went before, to see what people the cacique had with him. There were in the isle five or sixe thousand soules. And as soone as they saw them, supposing

1 The spade or shovel fish—*polyodon spatula*. Flint says (Geography of the Mississippi Valley, i, 129), “We have never remar ked this fish in any Museum, although to us the most strange and whimsical-looking fish we have seen.” There are several specimens in the British Museum.

2 The words “pexe pereo”, in the original Portuguese, are in all probability a misprint for pexe, or pexe, *fish*, and porco, *hog*, the two words together meaning a porpoise, which English word indeed is derived from the corresponding Latin words *porcus piscis*. A doubt arising from the misprint, Hakluyt has, perhaps not injudiciously, preserved in his translation the word *pereo* exactly as he found it.
that the Indians which were in the other canoes were also Christians, the cacique, and certaine which were in three canoes, which they had there with them, fled in great haste to the other side of the river. The rest, with great feare and danger, leapt into the river, where much people was drowned, especially women and little children.

Presently the Governour, which was on land, not knowing what had happened to Don Antonio, and those that went with him, commanded the Christians with all speed to enter with the Indians of Casqui in the canoes, which were quickly with Don Antonio in the little island, where they tooke many men and women, and much goods. Great store of goods, which the Indians had laid upon hurdles of canes, and rafts of timber, to carry over to the other side, drave down the river, wherewith the Indians of Casqui filled their canoes: and for feare lest the Christians would take it from them, the cacique went home with them downe the river, without taking his leave of the Governour; whereupon the Governour was highly offended with him, and presently returning to Pacaha, he overran the countrie of Casqui the space of two leagues, where hee tooke twentie or thirtie of his men. And because his horses were wearie, and he wanted time that day to goe any farther, hee returned to Pacaha, with determination within three or foure daies after to invade Casqui. And presently he let loose one of the Indians of Pacaha, and sent word by him to the cacique, that if hee would have his friendship, he should repaire unto him, and that both of them would make warre upon Casqui. And presently came many Indians that belonged to Pacaha, and brought an Indian, instead of the cacique, which was discovered by the caciques brother which was taken prisoner. The Governour wished the Indians that their master himselfe should come: for hee knew very well that that was not hee; and told them, that they could doe nothing which he knew not before they thought it.
The next day the cacique came, accompanied with many Indians, and with a present of much fish, skinnes, and mantles. He made a speech that all were glad to heare, and concluded, saying, that though his lordship, without his giving occasion of offence, had done him hurt in his countrie and subjects; yet he would not therefore refuse to bee his, and that he would alwaies be at his commandement. The Governour commanded his brother to be loosed, and other principall Indians that were taken prisoners. That day came an Indian from the cacique of Casqui, and said, that his lord would come the next day to excuse himselfe of the error which he had committed, in going away without licence of the Governour. The Governour willed the messenger to signifie unto him, that if he came not in his owne person, he would seeke him himselfe, and give him such punishment as he deserved. The next day with all speede came the cacique of Casqui, and brought a present to the Governour of many mantles, skinnes, and fish, and gave him a daughter of his, saying, that he greatly desired to match his blood with the blood of so great a lord as he was, and therefore he brought him his daughter, and desired him to take her to his wife. Hee made a long and discreet oration, giving him great commendations, and concluded, saying, that hee should pardon his going away without licence, for that crosses sake, which he had left with him: protesting, that hee went away for shame of that which his men had done without his consent. The Governour answered him, that hee had chosen a good patrone; and that if he had not come to excuse himselfe, hee had determined to seeke him, to burne his townes, to kill him and his people, and to destroy his countrie. To which he replied, saying:

My lord, I and mine are yours, and my countrie likewise is yours: therefore if you had done so, you should have destroyed your owne countrie, and have killed your owne people: whatsoever shall come unto me from your hand, I will receive
as from my lord, as well punishment as reward. And know you, that the favour which you did me in leaving me the crosse, I do acknowledge the same to be a very great one, and greater than I have ever deserved. For you shall understand, that with great droughts, the fields of maiz of my countrie were withered; and as soon as I and my people kneeled before the crosse, and prayed for raine, presently our necessitie was relieved.

The Governour made him and the cacique of Pacaha friends; and set them with him at his table to dine with him: and the caciques fell at variance about the seates, which of them should sit on his right hand. The Governour pacified them; telling them, that among the Christians, all was one to sit on the one side or on the other, willing them so to behave themselves, seeing they were with him, that no bodie might heare them, and that every one should sit in the place that first hee lighted on. From thence he sent thirtie horsemen, and fiftie footeemen to the province of Caluça, to see if from thence hee might travell to Chisca, where the Indians said there was a worke of gold and copper. They travelled seven daies journie through a desert, and returned verie wearie, eating greene plums and stalkes of mais, which they found in a poore towne of sixe or seven houses. From thence forward toward the north, the Indians said, that the country was very ill inhabited, because it was very cold: and that there were such store of oxen, that they could keepe no corne for them: that the Indians lived upon their flesh. The Governour seeing that toward that part the countrie was so poore of maiz, that in it they could not bee sustained, demanded of the Indians, which way it was most inhabited: and they said, they had notice of a great province, and a very plenti-ful countrie, which was called Quigaute, and that it was toward the south.
CHAPTER XXV.

*How the Governour departed from Pacaha to Quigaute, and to Coligoa, and came to Cayas.*

The Governour rested in Pacaha fortie daies. In all which time the two caciques served him with great store of fish, mantles, and skinnes, and strove who should doe him greatest service. At the time of his departure, the cacique of Pacaha gave him two of his sisters, saying, that in signe of love that he might remember him, he should take them for his wives: the ones name was Macanoche, and the others Mochila. They were well proportioned, tall of bodie, and well fleshed. Macanoche was of a good countenance, and in her shape and physiognomie looked like a ladie; the other was strongly made. The cacique of Casqui commanded the bridge to be repaired, and the Governour returned through his countrey, and lodged in the field neere his towne, whither hee came with great store of fish and two women, which hee exchanged with two Christians for two shirts. He gave us a guide and men for cariages. The Governour lodged at a towne of his, and the next day at another neere a river, whither he caused canoes to be brought for him to passe over, and with his leave returned. The Governour tooke his journie toward Quigaute.

The fourth day of August, he came to the towne where the cacique used to keep his residencie: on the way he sent him a present of many mantles and skinnes, and not daring to stay for him in the towne, he absented himselfe. The towne was the greatest that was seene in Florida. The Governour and his people lodged in the one halfe of it; and within few daies, seeing the Indians became liars, he commanded the other halfe to be burned, because it should not
bee a shelter for them, if they came to assault him by night, nor an hindrance to his horsemen for the resisting of them. There came an Indian, very well accompanied with many Indians, saying, that hee was the cacique. He delivered him over to the men of his guard to look unto him.

There went and came many Indians, and brought mantles and skinnes. The counterfeit cacique, seeing so little opportunity to execute his evill thought, as hee went one day abroad talking with the Governour, he shewed him such a paire of heeles, that there was no Christian that could overtake him, and he leaped into the river, which was a crosse-bow shot from the towne; and as soone as he was on the other side, many Indians that were thereabout making a great crie, began to shoote. The Governour passed presently over to them with horsemen and footemen, but they durst not tarrie for him. Going forward on his way, hee came to a towne where the people were fled, and a little further to a lake, where the horses could not passe, and on the other side were many women. The footemen passed, and toke many of them, and much spoile. The Governour came to the camp; and that night was a spie of the Indians taken by them of the watch. The Governour asked him, whether he would bring him where the cacique was? he said he would. And he went presently to seeke him with twentie horsemen and fiftie footemen; and after he had sought him a day and an halfe, hee found him in a strong wood; and a souliour not knowing him, gave him a wound on the head, and he cried out that he should not kill him, saying, that he was the cacique; so he was taken, and an hundred and fortie of his men with him. The Governour came againe to Quigaute, and willed him to cause his men to come to serve the Christians; and staying some daies for their comming, and seeing they came not, he sent two captaines, every one his way, on both sides of the river, with horsemen and footemen. They tooke many men and women. Now seeing the hurt which they sustained.
for their rebellion, they came to see what the Governour would command them, and passed to and fro many times, and brought presents of cloth and fish.

The cacique and his two wives were in the lodging of the Governour loose, and the halbardiars of his guard did keepe them. The Governour asked them which way the countrie was most inhabited? They said, that toward the south, downe the river, were great townes and caciques, which commanded great countries, and much people. And that toward the northwest, there was a province neere to certaine mountaines, that was called Coligoa. The Governour and all the rest thought good to goe first to Coligoa, saying, that peradventure the mountains would make some difference of soile, and that beyond them there might be some gold or silver. As for Quigaute, Casqui, and Pacaha, they were plaine countries, fat grounds, and full of good medowes on the rivers, where the Indians sowed large fields of maiz. From Tascaluca to Rio Grande, or the Great River, is about three hundred leagues; it is a very low countrie, and hath many lakes. From Pacaha to Quigaute may be an hundred leagues. The Governour left the cacique of Quigaute in his owne towne; and an Indian, which was his guide, led him through great woods without any way seven daies journie through a desert, where, at every lodging, they lodged in lakes and pooles in verie shold water: there was such store of fish that they killed them with cudgils; and the Indians, which they carried in chaines, with the mud troubled the waters, and the fish being therewith, as it were, astonished, came to the top of the water, and they tooke as much as they listed.

The Indians of Coligoa had no knowledge of the Chris-
tians; and when they came so neere the towne that the Indians saw them, they fled up a river, which passed neere the towne, and some leaped into it, but the Christians went on both sides of the river and tooke them. There were
many men and women taken, and the cacique with them. And by his commandement, within three daies came many Indians with a present of mantles and deeres skinnes, and two oxe hides; and they reported, that five or sixe leagues from thence toward the north, there were many of these oxeen, and that because the countrie was cold, it was ever inhabited: that the best countrie which they knew, the most plenteous, and most inhabited, was a province called Cayas, lying toward the south. From Quiguato to Coloigoa may be forty leagues. This town of Coloigoa stood at the foot of an hill, on the bank of a meane river, of the bignesse of Cayas, the river that passeth by Estremadura. It was a fat soile, and so plenteous of maiz, that they cast out the old to bring in the new. There was also great plente of french beans and pompsions. The french beans were greater and better then those of Spaine, and likewise the pompsions, and being rosted, they have almost the taste of chestnuts. The cacique of Coloigoa gave a guide to Cayas, and staid behind in his owne towne. Wee travelled five daies, and came to the province of Palisema. The house of the cacique was found covered with deeres skinnes of divers colours and works drawne in them, and with the same in manner of carpets was the ground of the house covered. The cacique left it so, that the Governour might lodge in it, in token that he sought peace and his friendship. But hee durst not tarrie his coming. The Governour, seeing he had absented himselfe, sent a capitaine with horsemen and footemen to seeke him. Hee found much people, but by reason of the roughnesse of the countrie, he tooke none save a few women and children. The towne was little and scattering, and had very little maiz; for which cause the Governour speedilie departed from thence. Hee came to another towne called Tatalicoya; hee carried with him the cacique thereof, which guided him to Cayas. When hee came to Cayas, and saw the towne scattered, hee thought they had told him a lie, and that it was
not the province of Cayas, because they had informed him that it was well inhabited. He threatened the cacique, charging him to tell him where he was; and he, and other Indians which were taken neere about that place, affirmed that this was the towne of Cayas, and the best that was in that countrey; and that though the houses were distant the one from the other, yet the ground that was inhabited was great, and that there was great store of people, and many fields of maiz. This towne was called Tanico. He pitched Tanico. his campe in the best part of it, neere unto a river.

The same day that the Governour came thither, he went a league farther with certaine horsemen, and without finding any people; hee found many skinnes in a pathway, which the cacique had left there, that they might bee found, in token of peace. For so is the custome in that countrey.

CHAPTER XXVI.

How the Governour discovered the province of Tulla, and what happened unto him.

The Governor rested a moneth in the province of Cayas. In which time the horses fattened and thrived more then in other places in a longer time, with the great plentie of maiz and the leaves thereof, which I thinke was the best that hath been seene, and they dranke of a lake of very hot water, and somewhat brackish, and they dranke so much, that it swelled in their bellies when they brought them from the watering. Untill that time the Christians wanted salt, and there they made good store, which they carried along with them. The Indians doe carry it to other places to exchange it for skinnes and mantles. They make it along the river, which,
when it ebbeth, leaveth it upon the upper part of the sand. And because they cannot make it, without much sand mingled with it, they throw it into certaine baskets, which they have for that purpose, broad at the mouth, and narrow at the bottom, and set it in the aire upon a barre, and throw water into it, and set a small vessell under it, wherein it falleth. Being strained and set to boile upon the fire, when the water is sodden away, the salt remaineth in the bottome of the pan. On both sides of the river the countrie was full of sowne fields, and there was store of maiz.

The Indians durst not come over where wee were; and when some of them shewed themselves, the soouldiers that saw them called unto them; then the Indians passed the river, and came with them where the Governor was. He asked them for the cacique. They said that he remained quiet, but that he durst not shew himselfe. The Governour presently sent him word, that he should come unto him, and bring him a guide and an interpretour for his journie, if he made account of his friendship; and if he did not so, he would come himselfe to seeke him, and that it would bee the worse for him. Hee waited three daies, and seeing he came not, he went to seeke him, and brought him prisoner with one hundred and fifty of his men. He asked him, whether hee had notice of any great cacique, and which way the countrie was best inhabited. Hee answered, that the best countrie thereabout was a province toward the south, a day and an halfes journie, which was called Tulla; and that he could give him a guide, but no interpretour, because the speech of that countrie was different from his, and because he and his ancestors had alwaies warres with the lords of that province; therefore they had no commerce, nor understood one anothers language.

Immediately the Governour, with certaine horsemen and fifty footemen, departed toward Tulla, to see if the countrie were such as hee might passe through it with all his com-
panie: and as soone as he arrived there, and was espied of the Indians, the country gathered together, and as soone as fifteen or twenty Indians could assemble themselves, they set upon the Christians; and seeing that they did handle them shrewdly, and that the horsemen overtooke them when they fled, they gat up into the tops of their houses, and sought to defend themselves with their arrowes; and being beaten downe from one, they gat up upon another. And while our men pursued some, others set upon them another way. Thus the skirmish lasted so long, that the horses were tired, and they could not make them runne. The Indians killed there one horse, and some were hurt. There were fifteen Indians slaine there, and forty women and boies were taken prisoners. For whatsoever Indian did shoot at them, if they could come by him, they put him to the sword.

The Governour determined to returne toward Cayas before the Indians had time to gather a head; and presently that evening, going part of the night to leave Tulla, he lodged by the way, and the next day came to Cayas; and within three daies after he departed thence toward Tulla with all his companie. He carried the cacique along with him; and among all his men, there was not one found that could understand the speech of Tulla. He staid three daies by the way, and the day that he came thither, he found the towne abandoned, for the Indians durst not tarrie his coming. But as soone as they knew that the Governour was in Tulla, the first night about the morning watch, they came in two squadrions two severall waies, with their bowes and arrowes, and long staves like pikes. As soone as they were descried, both horse and foot sallied out upon them, where many of the Indians were slaine, and some Christians and horses were hurt; some of the Indians were taken prisoners, whereof the Governour sent sixe to the cacique, with their right hands and noses cut off; and sent him word, that if he came not to him to excuse and submit himselfe, that hee
would come to seeke him, and that hee would doe the like to him, and as many of his as hee could find, as hee had done to those which hee had sent him, and gave him three daies respite for to come. And this he gave them to understand by signes, as well as hee could, for there was no interpretour.

At the three daies end, there came an Indian laden with oxe hides. He came weeping with great sobes, and comming to the Governour cast himselfe downe at his feete. He tooke him up, and he made a speech, but there was none that understood him. The Governour by signes commanded him to returne to the cacique, and to will him to send him an interpretor, which could understand the men of Cayas. The next day came three Indians laden with oxe hides; and within three daies after came twenty Indians, and among them one that understood them of Cayas: who, after a long oration of excuses of the cacique, and praises of the Governour, concluded with this, that he and the other were come thither on the caciques behalfe, to see what his lordship would command him to doe, for he was readie at his commandement. The Governour and all his companie were verie glad; for in no wise could they travell without an interpretor. The Governour commanded him to be kept safe, and bad him tell the men that came with him, that they should returne to the cacique, and signifie unto him, that he pardoned him for that which was past, and thanked him much for his presents and interpretor, which he had sent him, and that he would bee glad to see him, and that he shuld come the next day to talke with him. After three daies, the cacique came, and eighty Indians with him; and himselfe and his men came weeping into the camp, in token of obedience and repentance for the errour passed, after the manner of that countrie. He brought a present of many oxe hides; which, because the countrie was cold, were verie profitable, and served for coverlets, because they were very
soft, and wolleth like sheepe. Not farre from thence toward the north were many oxen. The Christians saw them not, nor came into the countrie where they were, because those parts were evill inhabited, and had small store of maiz where they were bred. The cacique of Tulla made an oration to the Governour, wherein he excuseth himselfe, and offered him his countrie, subjects, and person. As well this cacique as the others, and all those which came to the Governour on their behalfe, delivered their message or speech in so good order, that no oratour could utter the same more eloquentlie.

---

CHAPTER XXVII.

*How the Governour went from Tulla to Autiamque, where he passed the winter.*

The Governour enformed himselfe of all the countrie round about; and understood, that toward the west was a scattered dwelling, and that toward the south-east were great townes, especially in a province called Autiamque, tenne daies journie from Tulla; which might be about eighty leagues: and that it was a plentifull countrie of maiz. And because winter came on, and that they could not travell two or three moneths in the yeere for cold, waters, and snow: and fearing, that if they should stay so long in the scattered dwelling, they could not be sustained; and also because the Indians said, that neere to Autiamque was a great water, and according to their relation the Governour thought it was some arme of the sea: and because he now desired to send newes of himselfe to Cuba, that some supplie of men and horses might be sent unto him (for it was above three yeeres since Donna Isabella,
which was in Havana, or any other person in Christendome, had heard of him, and by this time he had lost two hundred and fifty men, and one hundred and fifty horses) he determined to winter in Autiamque; and the next spring, to goe to the sea cost, and make two brigantines, and send one of them to Cuba, and the other to Nueva Espanna, that which went in safetie, might give newes of him: hoping with the goods which he had in Cuba, to furnishe himselfe againe, and to attempt the discovery and conquest toward the west; for he had not yet come where Cabeça de Vaca had been. Thus having sent away the two caciques of Cayas and Tulla, he tooke his jornie toward Autiamque. Hee travelled five daies over very rough mountaines, and came to a towne called Quipana, where no Indians could be taken for the roughnesse of the coutrie: and the towne being betweene hilles, there was an ambush laid, wherewith they tooke two Indians, which told them, that Autiamque was sixe daies jornie from thence, and that there was another province toward the south, eight daies jornie off, plentifull of maiz, and very well peopled, which was called Guahate. But because Autimaque was neerer, and the most of the Indians agreed of it, the Governour made his jornie that way.

In three daies he came to a towne called Anoixi. He sent a captaine before with thirty horsemen, and fifty footmen, and tooke the Indians carelesse: hee tooke many men and women prisoners. Within two daies after the Governour came to another towne, called Catamaya, and lodged in the fields of the towne. Two Indians came with a false message from the cacique to know his determination. Hee bad them tell their lord, that hee should come and speake with him. The Indians returned and came no more, nor any other message from the cacique. The next day the Christians went to the towne, which was without people: they tooke as much maiz as they needed. That day they lodged in a wood, and the next day they came to Autiamque. They
found much maiz laid up in store, and french beanes, and
walnuts, and prunes, great store of all sorts. They tooke
some Indians, which were gathering together the stuffe which
their wives had hidden. This was a champion country, and
well inhabited. The Governour lodged in the best part of
the towne, and commanded presently to make a sense of tim-ern round about the campe, distant from the houses, that the
Indians might not hurt them without by fire. And measur-
ing the ground by pases, hee appointed every one his part
to doe according to the number of Indians which he had:
presently the timber was brought by them; and in three
daies there was an inclosure made of very hie and thicke
posts thrust into the ground, and many railes laid acrosse.
Hard by this towne passed a river, that came out of the pro-
vince of Cayas; and above and beneath it was very well
peopled. Thither came Indians on the caciques behalfe with
a present of mantles and skinnes; and an halting cacique,
subject to the lord of Autiameque, lord of a towne called
Tietiquaquo, came many times to visit the Governour, and
to bring him presents of such as hee had. The cacique of
Autiameque sent to know of the Governour, how long time
hee meant to stay in his country? And understanding that
hee meant to stay above three daies, he never sent any more
Indians, nor any other message, but conspired with the lame
cacique to rebell. Divers inrodes were made, wherein there
were many men and women taken, and the lame cacique
among the rest. The Governour, respecting the services
which he had received from him, reprohended and admon-
ished him, and set him at libertie, and gave him two Indians
to carrie him in a chaire upon their shoulders. The cacique
of Autiamque desiring to thrust the Governour out of his
countrie, set spies over him. And an Indian comming one
night to the gate of the inclosure, a souldier that watched
espied him; and stepping behind the gate, as he came in he
gave him such a thrust, that he fell downe; and so he carried
him to the Governour: and as hee asked him wherefore he came, not being able to speake, hee fell downe dead. The night following, the Governour commanded a souliour to give the alarme, and to say that he had seen Indians, to see how ready they would be to answere the alarme. And hee did so sometimes, as well there as in other places, when he thought that his men were careless, and reprehended such as were slacke. And as well for this cause, as in regard of doing their dutie, when the alarme was given, every one sought to be the first that should answere.

They staied in Autiamque three moneths, with great plentie of maiz, french beans, walnuts, prunes, and conies: which untill that time they knew not how to catch. And in Autiamque the Indians taught them how to take them: which was, with great sprindges, which lifted up their feete from the ground: and the snare was made with a strong string, whereunto was fastened a knot of a cane, which ran close about the neck of the conie, because they should not gnaw the string. They tooke many in the fields of maiz, especiallie when it freesed or snowed. The Christians staied there one whole moneth, so inclosed with snow that they went not out of the towne; and when they wanted firewood, the Governour with his horsemen going and comming many times to the wood, which was two crossebow shot from the towne, made a path-way, whereby the footemen went for wood. In this meane space, some Indians which went loose, killed many conies with their gives¹ and with arrowes. These conies were of two sorts, some were like those of Spaine, and the other of the same colour and fashion, and as big as great hares, longer, and having greater loines.

¹ The Portuguese word “armadilhas”, here rendered “gives”, should have been “snares”.
CHAPTER XXVIII.

How the Governour went from Autiamque to Nilco, and from thence to Guacoya.

Upon Monday the sixt of March 1542, the Governour departed from Autiamque to seeke Nilco, which the Indians said was neere the great river, with determination to come to the sea, and procure some succour of men and horses: for he had now but three hundred men of warre, and fortie horses, and some of them lame, which did nothing but helpe to make up the number: and for want of iron they had gone above a yeere unshod: and because they were used to it in the plaine countrie, it did them no great harme. John Ortiz died in Autiamque; which grieved the Governour very much: because that without an interpretour hee feared to enter farre into the land, where he might be lost. From thence forward a youth that was taken in Cutifa-Chiqui did serve for interpretour, which had by that time learned somewhat of the Christians language. The death of John Ortiz was so great a mischiefe for the discovering inward, or going out of the land, that to learne of the Indians, that which in foure words hee declared, they needed a whole day with the youth: and most commonly hee understood quite contrarie that which was asked him: whereby it often happened that the way that they went one day, and sometimes two or three daies, they turned backe, and went astray through the wood here and there. The Governour spent ten daies in travelling from Autiamque to a province called Ayays; and came to a towne that stood neere the river that passeth by Cayas and Autiamque. The Governour commanded a barge to be made, wherewith he passed the river. When he had passed the river, there fell out such weather, that foure daies he could not travell for snow. As soone as it gave over snowing, he went three daies
journey through a wildernesse, and a countrie so low, and so full of lakes and evill waies, that hee travelled one time a whole day in water, sometimes knee deepe, sometimes to the stirrup, and sometimes they swamme. He came to a towne called Tutelpinco, abandoned, and without maiz: there passed by it a lake, that entred into the river, which carried a great streame and force of water. Five Christians passing over it in a peragua,¹ which the Governour had sent with a capitaine, the peragua overset: some tooke hold on it, some on the trees that were in the lake. One Francis Sebastian, an honest man of Villa Nova de Barca Rota, was drowned there.

The Governour went a whole day along the lake seeking passage, and could finde none, nor any way that did passe to the other side. Comming againe at night to the towne, hee found two peaceable Indians, which shewed him the passage, and which way hee was to goe. There they made of canes and of the timber of houses thatched with canes, rafts, where-with they passed the lake. They travelled three daies, and came to a towne of the territorie of Nilco, called Tianto. There they tooke thirtie Indians, and among them two principall men of this towne. The Governour sent a capitaine with horsemen and footmen before to Nilco, because the Indians might have no time to carrie away the provision. They passed through three or foure great townes; and in the towne where the cacique was resident, which was two leagues from the place where the Governour remained, they found many Indians, with their bowes and arrowes, in manner as though they would have staied to fight, which did compasse the towne; and as soone as they saw the Christians come neere

¹ A Spanish word, more correctly spelt "piragua", meaning a ferry-boat: the word used in the original Portuguese is "almadia", derived from the Arabic root "ada", to pass, or to transport over a river. It is a small skiff, or canoe, used for crossing lakes and small streams, and also for fishing. Those used in Morocco are called maadia, and are commonly made of a kind of bull rush strongly bound together, which grows on the banks of the lakes of the country; and they are generally navigated by one man.
them without misdoubting them, they set the caciques house on fire, and fled over a lake that passed neere the towne, through which the horses could not passe.

The next day, being Wednesday the 29 of March, the Governour came to Nilco: he lodged with all his men in the caciques towne, which stood in a plaine field, which was inhabited for the space of a quarter of a league: and within a league and halfe a league were other great townes, wherein was great store of maiz, of french beanes, of walnuts, and prunes. This was the best countrie that was seen in Florida, and had most store of maiz, except Coça and Apalache. There came to the campe an Indian accompanied with others, and in the caciques name gave the Governour a mantle of marterns skinnes, and a cordon of perles. The Governour gave him a few small margarites, which are certaine beades much esteemed in Peru, and other things, wherewith he was very well contented. He promised to returne within two daies, but never came againe; but on the contrarie the Indians came by night in canoes, and carried away all the maiz they could, and made them cabins on the other side of the river in the thickest of the wood, because they might flee if wee should goe to seeke them. The Governour, seeing hee came not at the time appointed, commanded an ambush to be laid about certaine store-houses neere the lake, whither the Indians came for maiz: where they tooke two Indians, who told the Governour, that hee which came to visit him, was not the cacique, but was sent by him under pretence to spie whether the Christians were carelesse, and whether they determined to settle in that country or to goe forward. Presently the Governour sent a captaine with footmen and horsemen over the river; and in their passage they were descried of the Indians, and therefore he could take but tenne or twelve men and women, with whom hee returned to the campe. This river, which passed by Nilco, was that which passed by Cayas and Autiamque, and fell into Río Grande,
or the great river, which passed by Pachaha and Aquixo, neere unto the province of Guachoya: and the lord thereof came up the river in canoes to make warre with him of Nilco. On his behalf there came an Indian to the Governour and said unto him, that he was his servant, and prayed him so to hold him, and that within two daies hee would come to kisse his lordships hands: and at the time appointed he came with some of his principal Indians, which accompanied him, and with words of great offers and courtesie hee gave the Governour a present of many mantles and deeres skinnes. The Governour gave him some other things in recompense, and honoured him much. Hee asked him what townes there were downe the river? Hee answered that he knew none other but his owne: and on the other side of the river a province of a cacique called Quigalta. So hee tooke his leave of the Governour and went to his owne town.

Within fewe daies the Governour determined to goe to Guachoya, to learne there whether the sea were neere, or whether there were any habitation neere, where hee might relieve his companie, while the brigantines were making, which he meant to send to the land of the Christians. As he passed the river of Nilco, there came in canoes Indians of Guachoya up the streame; and when they saw him, supposing that he came to seeke them to doe them some hurt, they returned downe the river, and informed the cacique thereof: who, with all his people, spoiling the towne of all that they could carrie away, passed that night over to the other side of Rio Grande, or the great river. The Governour sent a captaine with fiftie men in sixe canoes downe the river, and went himselfe by land with the rest. Hee came to Guachoya upon Sunday the 17 of Aprill: he lodged in the towne of the cacique, which was inclosed about, and seated a crossebow shot distant from the river. Here the river is called Tama-
liseu; and in Nilco, Tapatu; and in Coça, Mico; and in the port or mouth, Ri.
CHAPTER XXIX.

Of the message which the Governour sent to Quigalta, and of the
answers which he returned, and of the things which
happened in this time.

As soone as the Governour came to Guachoya, hee sent
John Danusco, with as many men as could goe in the canoes,
up the river. For when they came downe from Nilco, they
saw on the other side the river new cabins made. John
Danusco went and brought the canoes loden with maiz,
French beanes, prunes, and many loaves made of the sub-
stance of prunes. That day came an Indian to the Gover-
nor from the cacique of Guachoya, and said, that his lord
would come the next day. The next day they saw many
canoes come up the river, and on the other side of the great
river they assembled together in the space of an hour; they
consulted whether they should come or not; and at length
concluded to come, and crossed the river. In them came the
cacique of Guachoya, and brought with him manie Indians,
with great store of fish, dogges, deeres skynnes, and mantles.
And as soone as they landed, they went to the lodging of the
Governour, and presented him their gifts; and the cacique
uttered these words:

Mightie and excellent lord, I beseech your lordship to
pardon mee the errour which I committed in absenting my-
selfe, and not tarrying in this towne to have received and
served your lordship; since, to obtaine this opportunitie of
time, was, and is, as much as a greate victorie to me. But
I feared that which I needed not to have feared, and so did
that which was not reason to do. But as haste maketh waste,
and I removed without deliberation; so, as soone as I thought
on it, I determined not to follow the opinion of the foolish,
which is, to continue in their errour; but to imitate the wise
and discreet in changing my counsell, and so I came to see
what your lordship will command me to doe, that I may serve
you in all things that are in my power.

The Governour received him with much joy, and gave
him thankes for his present and offer. He asked him, whether
hee had any notice of the sea? Hee answered, no; nor of
any townes downe the river on that side: save that two
leagues from thence was one towne of a principall Indian, a
subject of his; and on the other side of the river, three daies
journey from thence downe the river, was the province of
Quigalta, which was the greatest lord that was in that
countrie. The Governour thought that the cacique lied unto
him, to rid him out of his owne townes, and sent John Danusco
with eight horsemen downe the river to see what habitation
there was, and to informe himselfe if there were any notice
of the sea. Hee travelled eight daies, and at his returne hee
said, that in all that time he was not able to go above four-
teen or fifteen leagues, because of the great creekes that
came out of the river, and groves of canes, and thick woods,
that were along the bancks of the river, and that hee had
found no habitation. The Governour fell into great dumps
to see how hard it was to get to the sea; and worse, because
his men and horses every day diminished, being without
succour to sustaine themselves in the country; and with that
thought he fell sick. But before he tooke his bed, hee sent
an Indian to the cacique of Quigalta, to tell him that hee
was the childe of the sunne; and that all the way that hee
came, all men obeyed and served him, that he requested him
to accept of his friendship, and come unto him, for he would
be very glad to see him; and in signe of love and obedience,
to bring something with him of that which in his countrie
was most esteemed. The cacique answered by the same
Indian:

That whereas he said he was the child of the sunne, if he
would drie up the river he would beleve him: and touching
the rest, that hee was wont to visit none; but rather that all
those of whom he had notice did visit him, served, obeyed and
paid him tributes willingly or perforce: therefore, if hee
desired to see him, it were best he should come thither: that
if hee came in peace, he would receive him with speciall good
will; and if in warre, in like manner hee would attend him
in the towne where he was; and that for him or any other
hee would not shrinke one foote backe.

By that time the Indian returned with this answere, the
Governour had betaken himselfe to bed, being evill handled
with fevers, and was much aggrieved that he was not in case
to passe presently the river and to seeke him, to see if he
could abate that pride of his, considering the river went now
very strongly in those parts; for it was neere halfe a league
broad and sixteen fathomes deep, and very furious, and
ranne with a great current; and on both sides there were
many Indians; and his power was not now so great but that
hee had need to helpe himselfe rather by slights then by
force. The Indians of Guachoya came every day with fish,
in such numbers that the towne was full of them. The
cacique said, that on a certaine night hee of Quigalta would
come to give battell to the Governour; which the Govern-
nour imagined that he had devised to drive him out of his
countrey, and commanded him to bee put in hold; and that
night and all the rest there was good watch kept. Hee asked
him wherefore Quigalta come not? He said that hee came,
but that he saw him prepared, and therefore durst not give
the attempt; and hee was earnest with him to send his cap-
taines over the river, and that he would aide him with many
men to set upon Quigalta. The Governour told him that as
soone as he was recovered, himselfe would seeke him out.
And seeing how many Indians came daily to the towne, and
what store of people was in that countrie, fearing they should
all conspire together and plot some treason against him; and
because the towne had some open gaps which were not made an end of inclosing, besides the gates which they went in and out by; because the Indians should not thinke he feared them, he let them all alone unrepaired, and commanded the horsemen to be appointed to them and to the gates; and all night the horsemen went the round, and two and two of every squadron rode about, and visited the skouts that were without the towne in their standings by the passages, and the crossebowmen that kept the canoes in the river. And because the Indians should stand in feare of them, hee determined to send a captaine to Nilco, for those of Guachoya had told him that it was inhabited; that by using them cruelly, neither the one nor the other should presume to assaile him; and hee sent Nunnez de Tovar with fiftie horsemen, and John de Guzman, captaine of the footmen, with his companie in canoes up the river.

The cacique of Guachoya sent for many canoes and many warlike Indians to goe with the Christians; and the captaine of the Christians, called Nunnez de Tovar, went by land with his horsemen, and two leagues before he came to Nilco hee staied for John de Guzman, and in that place they passed the river by night: the horsemen came first, and in the morning by breake of day in sight of the towne they lighted upon a spie, which, as soone as he perceived the Christians, crying out amaine, fled to the towne to give warning. Nunnez de Tovar and his companie made such speed, that before the Indians of the towne could fully come out, they were upon them: it was champion ground that was inhabited, which was about a quarter of a league. There were about five or saxe thousand people in the towne; and, as many people came out of the houses, and fled from one house to another, and many Indians came flocking together from all parts; there was never a horseman that was not alone among many. The captaine had commanded that they should not spare the life of any male. Their disorder was so great, that
there was no Indian that shot an arrow at any Christian. The shreekes of women and children were so great, that they made the eares deaf of those that followed them. There were slaine an hundred Indians, little more or lesse; and many were wounded with great wounds, whom they suffered to escape, to strike a terror in the rest that were not there. There were some so cruel and butcher-like, that they killed old and young, and all that they met, though they made no resistance; and those which presumed of themselves for their valour, and were taken for such, brake through the Indians, bearing downe many with their stirrups and breasts of their horses, and some they wounded with their lances, and so let them goe; and when they saw any youth or woman they tooke them, and delivered them to the footmen. These men's sinnes, by God's permission, lighted on their own heads, who, because they would seeme valiant, became cruel, shewing themselves extreme cowards in the sight of all men, when as most neede of valour was required, and afterward they came to a shameful death. Of the Indians of Nilco were taken prisoners fourscore women and children, and much spoile. The Indians of Guachoya kept back before they came at the towne, and staied without, beholding the successes of the Christians with the men of Nilco. And when they saw them put to flight, and the horsemen busie in killing of them, they hastened to the houses to rob, and filled their canoes with the spoile of the goods, and returned to Guachoya before the Christians; and wondring much at the sharpe dealing which they had seene them use toward the Indians of Nilco, they told their cacique all that had passed with great astonishment.
CHAPTER XXX.

Of the death of the Adelantado Fernando de Soto: and how Luys Moscoso de Alvarado was elected Governour in his stead.

The Governour felt in himselfe that the houre approched wherein hee was to leave this present life, and called for the kings officers, captaines, and principall persons, to whom he made a speech, saying:

That now he was to goe to give an account before the presence of God of all his life past: and since it pleased Him to take him in such a time, and that the time was come that he knew his death, that he His most unworthy servant did yeeld Him many thankes therefore; and desired all that were present and absent (whom he confessed himselfe to be much beholding unto for their singular vertues, love, and loyaltie, which himselfe had well tried in the travels which they had suffered, which alwaies in his mind he did hope to satisfie and reward, when it should please God to give him rest, with more prosperitie of his estate), that they would pray to God for him, that for His mercie He would forgive him his sinnes, and receive his soule into eternall glorie: and that they would quit and free him of the charge which hee had over them, and ought unto them all, and that they would pardon him for some wrongs which they might have received of him. And to avoid some division, which upon his death might fall out upon the choice of his successour, he requested them to elect a principall person, and able to governe, of whom all should like well; and when he was elected, they should swear before him to obey him: and that he would thanke them very much in so doing; because the griefe that he had would somewhat be asswaged, and the paine that he felt, because he left them in so great confusion, to wit, in leaving them in a strange countrie, where they knew not where they were.
Baltasar de Gallegos answered in the name of all the rest. And first of all comforting him, he set before his eyes how short the life of this world was, and with how many troubles and miseries it is accompanied, and how God shewed him a singular favor which soonest left it: telling him many other things fit for such a time. And for the last point, that since it pleased God to take him to himselfe, although his death did justly grieve them much, yet as well he, as all the rest ought of necessitie to conforme themselves to the will of God. And touching the Governour which he commanded they should elect, he besought him, that it would please his lordship to name him which he thought fit, and him they would obey. And presently he named Luys de Moscoso de Alvarado, his captain general. And presently he was sworn by all that were present and elected for Governour. The next day being the 21 of May, 1542, departed out of this life, the valorous, virtuous, and valiant captain, Don Fernando de Soto, Governour of Cuba, and Adelantado of Florida; whom fortune advanced, as it useth to doe others, that hee might have the higher fal. He departed in such a place, and at such a time, as in his sickness he had but little comfort: and the danger wherein all his people were of perishing in that countrie, which appeared before their eyes, was cause sufficient, why every one of them had need of comfort, and why they did not visit nor accompanie him as they ought to have done. Luys de Moscoso determined to conceal his death from the Indians, because Ferdinando de Soto had made them beleeve that the Christians were immortal, and also because they tooke him to be hardie, wise, and valiant: and if they should know that he was dead, they would bee bold to set upon the Christians, though they lived peaceable by them. In regard of their disposition, and because they were nothing constant, and beleived all that was told them, the Adelantado made them beleeve, that he knew some things that passed in secret among themselves, without their knowledge, how, or in
what manner he came by them: and that the figure which appeared in a glasse, which he shewed them, did tell him whatsoever they practised and went about; and therefore neither in word nor deed durst they attempt any thing that might bee prejudiciall unto him.

As soone as he was dead, Luis de Moscoso commanded to put him secretly in an house, where hee remained three daies: and remooving him from thence, commanded him to bee buried in the night at one of the gates of the towne within the wall. And as the Indians had scene him sick, and missed him, so did they suspect what might bee. And passing by the place where hee was buried, seeing the earth mooved, they looked and spake one to another. Luys de Moscoso understanding of it, commanded him to be taken up by night, and to cast a great deale of sand into the mantles, wherein he was winded up, wherein hee was carried in a canoe, and throwne into the middest of the river. The cacique of Guachoya inquired for him, demanding what was become of his brother and lord, the Governour. Luys de Moscoso told him, that he was gon to heaven, as many other times hee did; and because hee was to stay there certaine daies, hee had left him in his place. The cacique thought with himself that he was dead; and commanded two young and well-proportioned Indians to be brought thither; and said, that the use of that countrie was, when any lord died, to kill Indians to wait upon him, and serve him by the way: and for that purpose by his commandement were those come thither: and prayed Luys de Moscoso to command them to be beheaded, that they might attend and serve his lord and brother. Luys de Moscoso told him, that the Governour was not dead, but gone to heaven, and that of his owne Christian souldiers he had taken such as he needed to serve him, and praied him to command those Indians to be loosed, and not to use any such bad custome from thencefoorth. Straightway hee commanded them to be loosed, and to get them home to their houses. And one of
DON FERNANDO DE SOTO.

them would not goe; saying, that hee would not serve him that
without desert had judged him to death, but that hee would
serve him as long as hee lived, which had saved his life.

Luys de Moscoso caused all the goods of the Governour to
be sold at an outcrie: to wit, two men slaves, and two women
slaves, and three horses, and seven hundred hoggés. For
every slave or horse they gave two or three thousand ducats:
which were to be paiended at the first melting of gold or silver,
or at the division of their portion of inheritance. And they
entred into bonds, though in the countrie there was not
wherewith, to pay it within a yeere after, and put in sureties
for the same. Such as in Spaine had no goods to bind, gave
two hundred ducats for an hog, giving assurance after the
same manner. Those which had any goods in Spaine, bought
with more feare, and bought the lesse. From that time
forward, most of the companie had swine, and brought them
up, and fed upon them; and observed Fridaies and Saturdaies,
and the evenings of feasts, which before they did not. For
sometimes in two or three moneths they did eate no flesh, and
whenever they could come by it, they did eate it.

CHAPTER XXXI.

_How the Governour, Luys de Moscoso, departed from Guachoya, and went
to Chaguate; and from thence to Aquacay._

Some were glad of the death of Don Ferdinando de Soto,
holding for certayne that Luys de Moscoso (which was given
to his ease) would rather desire to be among the Christians
at rest, then to continue the labours of the warre in subduing
and discovering of countries, whereof they were alreadie

1 i.e. an auction:

"The goods of this poor man sold at an outcry,
His wife turn'd out of doors."—
(Massinger's "City Madam", act 1, sc. 3.)
wearie, seeing the small profit that ensued thereof. The Governour commanded the captaines and principall persons to meet, to consult and determine what they should doe. And being informed what peopled habitation was round about, he understood that to the west the countrie was most inhabited, and that downe the river beyond Quigalta was uninhabited, and had little store of food. He desired them all, that everie one would give his opinion in writing, and set his hand to it: that they might resolve by generall consent, whether they should goe downe the river, or enter into the maine land. All were of opinion, that it was best to go by land toward the west, because Nueva Espanna was that way; holding the voyage by sea more dangerous, and of greater hazard, because they could make no ship of any strength to abide a storme, neither had they master, nor pilot, compasse, nor chart, neither knew they how farre the sea was off, nor had any notice of it; nor whether the river did make any great turning into the land, or had any great fall from the rocks, where all of them might be cast away. And some which had seene the sea chart, did find, that from the place where they were by the sea coast to Nova Espanna, might be four hundred leagues, little more or lesse, and said, that though they went somewhat about by land in seeking a peopled countrie, if some great wildernesse which they could not passe did not hinder them, by spending that sommer in travell, finding provision to passe the winter in some peopled countrie, that the next sommer after they might come to some Christian land, and that it might fortune, in their travell by land, to find some rich countrie, where they might doe themselves good. The Governour, although he desired to get out of Florida in shorter time, seeing the inconveniences they laid before him, in travelling by sea, determined to follow that which seemed good to them all.

On Monday the fifth of June, he departed from Guachoya. The cacique gave him a guide to Chaguate, and staied at
home in his owne towne. They passed through a province called Catalte: and having passed a wildernes of sixe daies Catalte. journie, the twentieth day of the moneth he came to Chaguate. Chaguate. The cacique of this province had visited the Governour, Don Ferdinando de Soto, at Autiamque, whither he brought him presents of skinnes, and mantles, and salt. And a day before Luys de Moscoso came to his towne, we lost a Christian that was sicke; which hee suspected that the Indians had slaine. Hee sent the cacique word, that he should command his people to seeke him up, and send him unto him, and that he would hold him, as he did, for his friend: and if he did not, that neither he, nor his, should escape his hands, and that hee would set his countrie on fire. Presently the cacique came unto him, and brought a great present of mantles and skinnes, and the Christian that was lost, and made this speech following:

Right excellent lord, I would not deserve that conceit which you had of me, for all the treasure of the world. What enforced me to goe to visit and serve the excellent Lord Governour your father in Autiamque, which you should have remembred, where I offered myselfe with all loyaltie, faith, and love, during my life to serve and obey him? What then could be the cause, I having received favours of him, and neither you nor he having done me any wrong, that should moove me to doe the thing which I ought not? Believe this of mee, that neither wrong, nor any worldly interest, was able to make me to have done it, nor shall be able to blind me. But as in this life it is a naturall course, that after one pleasure, many sorrowes doe follow: so by your indignation, fortune would moderate the joy, which my heart conceieth with your presence; and that I should erre, where I thought surest to have hit the marke, in harboring this Christian which was lost, and using him in such manner as he may tell himselfe, thinking that herein I did you service, with purpose to deliver him unto you in Chaguate, and to serve
you to the uttermost of my power. If I deserve punishment for this, I will receive it at your hands, as from my lord, as if it were a favour. For the love which I did beare to the excellent Governour, and which I beare to you, hath no limit. And like as you give me chastisement, so will you also shew me favour. And that which now I crave of you is this, to declare your will unto me, and those things wherein I may bee able to doe you the most and best service.

The Governour answered him, that because he did not find him in that town, hee was incensed against him, thinking he had absented himself, as others had done: but seeing he now knew his loyalty and love, he would alwaies hold him as a brother, and favour him in all his affaires. The cacique went with him to the town where he resided, which was a daies journie from thence. They passed through a smal town, where there was a lake, where the Indians made salt: and the Christians made some one day while they rested there, of a brackish water, which sprang neere the town in ponds like fountaines. The Governour staied in Chaguate sixe daies. There he was informed of the habitation that was toward the west. They told him, that three daies journie from thence was a province called Aguacay. The day that he departed from Chaguate, a Christian, called Francisco de Guzman, the base sonne of a gentleman of Sivill, staied behind, and went to the Indians, with an Indian woman which he kept as his concubine, for feare he should be punished for gaming debts, that he did owe. The Governor had travelled two daies before he missed him; hee sent the cacique word to secke him up, and to send him to Aguacay, whither he travelled: which hee did not performe. From the cacique of Aguacay, before they came into the countrie, there met him on the way fifteen Indians with a present of skinnes, fish, and rosted venison. The Governour came to his town on Wednesday, the fourth of Julie. He found the town without people, and lodged in it: he staied there about a day;
during which, he made some roades, and tooke many men and women. There they had knowledge of the South Sea. Here there was great store of salt made of sand, which they gather in a vaine of ground like peeble stones. And it was made as they make salt in Cayas.

CHAPTER XXXII.

_How the Governour went from Aguacay to Naguatex, and what happened unto him._

The same day that the Governour departed from Aguacay, he lodged in a small towne subject to the lord of that province. The campe pitched hard by a lake of salt water, and that evening they made some salt there. The day following hee lodged betwecne two mountaines in a thinne grove of wood. The next day hee came to a small towne called Pato. The fourth day after his departure from Aguacay he came to the first habitation of a province called Amaye. There an Indian was taken, which said, that from thence to Naguatex was a day and a halfes journey, which they travelled, finding all the way inhabited places. Having passed the peopled countrie of Amaye, on Saturday, the 20 of Julie, they pitched their campe at noone betweene Amaye and Naguatex, along the corner of a grove of very faire trees. In the same place certaine Indians were discovered, which came to view them. The horsemen went out to them, and killed six, and tooke two; whom the Governour asked, wherefore they came? They said, to know what people hee had, and what order they kept; and that the cacique of Naguatex, their lord, had sent them; and that he, with other caciques which came to aide him, determined that day to bid him battell. While they were occupied in these questions and answeres, there
came many Indians by two waies in two squadrons; and when they saw they were descried, giving a great crie, they assaulted the Christians each squadron by it selfe; but seeing what resistance the Christians made them, they turned their backes and betooke themselves to flight, in which many of them lost their lives; and most of the horsemen following them in chase, carelesse of the camp, other two squadrons of Indians, which lay in ambush, set upon the Christians that were in the campe, which also they resisted, who also had their reward as the first. After the flight of the Indians, and that the Christians were retired, they heard a great noise a crossebow shot from the place where they were. The Governour sent twelve horsemen to see what it was. They found sixe Christians, foure footmen and two horsemen, among many Indians; the horsemen defending the footmen with great labour. These being of them that chased the first two squadrons, had lost themselves, and, comming to recover the campe, fell among those with whom they were fighting; and so they, and those that came to succour them, slew many of the Indians, and brought one alive to the campe, whom the Governour examined, who they were that came to bid him battell. He told him, that they were the cacique of Naguatex, and of Amaye, and another of a province called Hacanac, a lord of great countries and many subjects; and that the cacique of Naguatex came for captaine and chiefe of them all. The Governour commanded his right arme and nose to be cut off, and sent him to the cacique of Naguatex, charging him to tell him, that the next day hee would bee in his countrey to destroy him; and if hee would withstand his entrance, hee should stay for him.

That night he lodged there, and the next day hee came to the habitation of Naguatex, which was very scattering: he inquired where the caciques chiefe towne was? They told him that it was on the other side of a river that passed thereby. Hee travelled thitherward, and came unto it; and
on the other side hee saw many Indians, that tarried for him, making shew as though they would defend the passage. And because hee knew not whether it could bee waded, nor where the passage was, and that some Christians and horses were hurt, that they might have time to recover, he determined to rest certaine daies in the towne where he was. So hee pitched his campe a quarter of a league from the river, because the weather was very hot, neere unto the towne, in August. a thinne grove of very faire and hie trees, neere a brookes side; and in that place were certaine Indians taken, whom hee examined, whether the river were wadeable or no? They said, yea, at some times, and in some places. Within ten daies after, he sent two captaines with fifteene horsemen a pcece upward and downe the river, with Indians to shew them where they should goe over, to see what habitation was on the other side; and the Indians withstood them both, defending the passage of the river as farre as they were able, but they passed in despite of them; and on the other side of the river they saw great habitation, and great store of victuals, and with these newes returned to the camp.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

How the cacique of Naguates came to visite the Governour, and how the Governour departed from Naguates and came to Nondacao.

The Governour sent an Indian from Naguatex, where hee lay, to command the cacique to come to serve and obey him, and that hee would forgive him all that was past; and if he came not, that he would seeke him, and give him such punishement as he had deserved for that which he had done against him. Within two daies the Indian returned, and
said that the cacique would come the next day; which, the
same day when he came, sent many Indians before him,
among whom there were some principall men: hee sent them
to see what countenance they found in the Governour, to
resolve with himselfe whether hee should goe or not. The
Indians let him understand that he was comming, and went
away presently; and the cacique came within two houre,
accompanied with many of his men: they came all in a ranke
one before another on both sides, leaving a lane in the
middest, where hee came. They came where the Gover-
nour was, all of them weeping after the manner of Tulla,
which was not farre from thence toward the east. The
cacique made his due obedience, and this speech following:

Right high and mightie lord, whom all the world ought to
serve and obey, I was bold to appeare before your lordship,
having committed so heinous and abominable an act, as only
for me to have imagined, deserved to be punished; trusting
in your greatnes, that although I deserve to obtaine no pardon,
yet for your owne sake only you will use clemencie toward
me, considering how small I am in comparison of your lord-
ship; and not to think upon my weaknesses, which to my griefe
and for my greater good, I have knowne. And I beleevse that
you and yours are immortall; and that your lordship is lord
of the land of nature, seeing that you subdue all things, and
they obey you, even the very hearts of men. For when I
beheld the slaughter and destruction of my men in the battell,
which, through mine ignorance, and the counsell of a brother
of mine, which died in the same, I gave your lordship, pre-
sently I repented me in my heart of the error which I had
committed, and desired to serve and obey you; and to this
end I come, that your lordship may chastise and command
mee as your owne.

The Governour answered him, that he forgave him all
which was past; that from thenceforth hee should do his
dutie, and that he would hold him for his friend, and that he
would favour him in all things. Within foure daies hee departed thence, and comming to the river he could not passe, because it was growne very bigge; which seemed to him a thing of admiration, being at that time that it was, and since it had not rained a moneth before. The Indians said, that it increased many times after that manner without raining in all the countrie. It was supposed, that it might bee the tide that came into it. It was learned that the flood came alway from above, and that the Indians of all that countrie had no knowledge of the sea. The Governour returned unto the place where he had lodged before: and understanding within eight daies after that the river was passeable, he departed. He passed over and found the towne without people: he lodged in the field, and sent the cacique word to come unto him, and to bring him a guide to goe forward. And some daies being past, seeing the cacique came not, nor sent any bodie, hee sent two capitaines sundrie waies to burne the townes, and to take such Indians as they could finde. They burnt great store of victuals, and took many Indians. The cacique seeing the hurt that he received in his countrie, sent sixe principall Indians with three men for guides, which knew the language of the countrie, through which the Governour was to passe. Hee departed presently from Naguatex, and within three daies journey came to a towne of foure or five houses, which belonged to the cacique of that province, which is called Nissoone; it was evill inhabited and had little maiz. Two daies journey forward the guides which guided the Governour, if they were to goe westward, guided him to the east; and sometimes went up and downe through very great woods out of the way. The Governour commanded them to bee hanged upon a tree: and a woman that they tooke in Nissoone guided him, and went backe againe to seeke the way. In two daies he came to another miserable towne, called Lacane; an Indian was taken in that place, that said, that the countrie of Nondacao was a countrie of
great habitation, and the houses scattering the one from the other, as they use to bee in mountains, and had great store of maiz. The cacique came with his men weeping, like them of Naguatex: for this is their use in token of obedience: hee made him a present of much fish, and offered to doe what he would command him. Hee tooke his leave, and gave him a guide to the province of Soacatino.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

How the Governour went from Nondacao to Soacatino and Guasco, and passed through a desert, from whence, for want of a guide and an interpretour, he returned to Nilco.

The Governour departed from Nondacao toward Soacatino, and in five daies journie came to a province called Aays. The Indians which inhabited it, had no notice of the Christians: but as soone as they saw that they entred into their country, they assembled themselves: and as they came together fifty or one hundred, they came foorth to fight: while some fought, others came and charged our men another way, and while they followed some, others followed them. The fight lasted the greatest part of the day, till they came to their towne. Some horses and men were wounded, but not to any hurt of their travelling: for there was no wound that was dangerous. There was a great spoile made of the Indians. That day that the Governour departed from thence, the Indian that guided him said, that in Nondacao he had heard say, that the Indians of Soacatino had seene other Christians, whereof they all were very glad: thinking it might be true, and that they might have entred into those parts by Nueva Espanna; and that if it were so, it was in their owne hand to goe out of Florida, if they found nothing of profit: for
they feared they should lose themselves in some wildernes. This Indian led him two daies out of the way. The Governour commanded to torture him. He said, that the cacique of Nondacao, his lord, had commanded him to guide them so, because they were his enemies, and that hee was to doe as his lord commanded him. The Governour commanded him to be cast to the dogs: and another guided him to Soacatino, whither hee came the day following. It was a verie poore countrie; there was great want of maiz in that place. Hee asked the Indians, whether they knew of any other Christians. They said, that a little from thence toward the south they heard they were. He travelled twenty daies through a countrie evill inhabited, where they suffered great scarcitie and trouble. For that little maiz which the Indians had, they had hidden and buried in the woods, where the Christians, after they were well wearied with their travell, at the end of their journeie went to seeke by digging what they should eat. At last, comming to a province that was called Guasco, they found maiz, wherewith they loaded their horses, and the Indians that they had. From thence they went to another towne called Naquiscoça. The Indians said, they had no notice of any other Christians. The Governour commanded to torment them. They said, that they came first to another lordship, which was called Naçacahoz, and from thence returned again to the west, from whence they came.

The Governour came in two daies to Naçacahoz: some women were taken there: among whom there was one, which said, that she had seene Christians, and had been taken by them, and had run away. The Governour sent a captaine with fifteen horsemen to the place where the woman said she had seene them, to see if there were any signe of horses, or any token of their being there. After they had gone three or foure leagues, the woman that guided them said, that all
that she had told them was untrue. And so they held all
the rest that the Indians had said, of seeing Christians in the
land of Florida. And, because the countrey that way was
poore of mais, and toward the west there was no notice of
any habitation, they returned to Guasco.

The Indians told them there, that ten daies journie from
thence toward the west, was a river called Daycao, whither
they went sometimes a hunting and killing of deere; and
that they had seene people on the other side, but knew not
what habitation was there. There the Christians tooke such
mais as they found and could carrie, and going ten daies
journie through a wilderness, they came to the river which
the Indians had told them of. Ten horsemen, which the
Governour had sent before, passed over the same, and went
in a way that led to the river, and lighted upon a companie
of Indians that dwelt in verie little cabins; who, as soone as
they saw them, tooke themselves to flight, leaving that which
they had: all which was nothing but miserie and povertie.
The countrey was so poore, that among them all there was
not found halfe a peck of mais. The horsemen tooke two
Indians, and returned with them to the river, where the
Governour staied for them. He sought to learne of them
what habitation was toward the west. There was none in
the camp that could understand their language. The Gover-
nour assembled the captaines and principall persons to deter-

1 The “Rio del Oro” is placed in Ortelius’s map of Florida (Theatrum orbis terrarum, 1570) midway between the “Rio del Spirito Santo”, i.e., the
Mississippi, and the “Rio Escondido”, which is probably the “Rio Bravo
del Norte”; but it is difficult to determine which of the several rivers
within that space may be referred to. The reader will have already ob-
served that under the name of Florida are included countries lying far
beyond the tract at present bearing that designation. This name indeed
was originally, though vaguely, applied by the Spaniards to that part
of the United States lying between the ocean and the Appalachian
mountains, and extending east and west from about the Savannah river
as far as Texas.
mine, with their advice, what they should doe. And the most part said, that they thought it best to returne backe to Río Grande, or the great river of Guachoys; because that in Nilco and thereabout was store of maiz; saying, that they would make pinaces that winter, and the next sommer passe down the river to the seaward in them, and comming to the sea they would goe along the coast to Nueva Espanna. For though it seemed a doublful thing and difficult, by that which they had already alleaged, yet it was the last remedie they had. For by land they could not goe for want of an interpretour. And they held, that the countrie beyond the river of Daycao, where they were, was that which Cabeça de Vaca mentioned in his relation, that he passed of the Indians, which lived like the Alarbes, having no settled place, and fed upon tunas and rootes of the fields, and wilde beasts that they killed; which, if it were so, if they should enter into it, and finde no victuals to passe the winter, they could not chuse but perish. For they were entred alreadie into the beginning of October; and if they staied any longer, they were not able to returne for raine and snowes, nor to sustaine themselves in so poore a countrey. The Governour (that desired long to see himselfe in a place where hee might sleepe his full sleep, rather then to conquer and governe a countrie where so many troubles presented themselves) pre-

sently returned back that same way that he came.

1 i.e. the Arabs.
2 The Indian fig, or prickly pear—Cactus opuntia.
CHAPTER XXXV.

How they returned to Nilo, and came to Minoya, where they agreed to make ships to depart out of the land of Florida.

When that which was determined was published in the campe, there were many that were greatly grieved at it; for they held the sea voyage as doubtfull, for the evill meanes they had, and of as great danger as the travelling by land; and they hoped to finde some rich countrie before they came to the land of the Christians, by that which Cabeça de Vaca had told the emperour; and that was this, that after hee had found clothes made of cotton wooll, hee saw gold and silver, and stones of great value. And they had not yet come where hee had been. For untill that place hee alwaies travelled by the sea coast; and they travelled farre within the land; and that going toward the west, of necessitie they should come where hee had been. For he said, that in a certaine place he travelled many daies, and entred into the land toward the north. And in Guasco they had alreadie found some 'Turkie stones' and mantles of cotton wooll, which the Indians signified by signes that they had from the west; and that holding that course, they should draw neere to the land of the Christians. But though they were much discontented with it, and it grieved many to goe backward, which would rather have adventured their lives and have died in the land of Florida, then to have gone poore out of it: yet were they not a sufficient part to hinder that which was determined, because the principall men agreed with the Governour. And afterward there was one that said, hee would put out one of his owne eyes to put out another of Luis de Moscoso, because it would grieve him much to see him prosper; because as well himself as others of his friends

1 Turquoises.
had crossed that which hee durst not have done, seeing that within two daies hee should leave the government.

From Daycao, where now they were, to Rio Grande, or the Great River, was a hundred and fifty leagues, which unto that place they had gone westward. And by the way as they returned backe they had much adoe to find maiz to eate, for where they had passed the countrey was destroyed, and some little maiz that was left the Indians had hidden. The townes which in Naguatex they had burned (whereof it Naguatex. repentent them) were repaired againe, and the houses full of maiz. This countrie is well inhabited and plentifull. In that place are vessels made of clay, which differ very little from those of Estremoz, or Monte-mor. In Chaguate the Indians by commandement of the cacique came peaceably, and said, that the Christian which remained there would not come. The Governour wrote unto him, and sent him inke and paper, that he might answere. The substance of the words of the letter was, to declare unto him his determination, which was, to goe out of the land of Florida, and to put him in remembrance that he was a Christian, that hee would not remaine in the subjection of infidels; that hee pardonned him the fault which he had done in going away to the Indians; that hee should come unto him, and if they did stay him, that hee would advertise him thereof by writing. The Indian went with the letter, and came again without any more answere, then on the back side his name and his seale, that they might know he was alive. The Governour sent twelve horsemen to seeke him; but he, which had his spies, so hid himselfe, that they could not find him. For want of maiz, the Governour could not stay any longer to seeke him.

Hee departed from Chaguate, and passed the river by Aays; going downe by it, hee found a towne called Chilano, which as yet they had not seen. They came to Nilco, and found so little maiz as could not suffice till they made their
ships; because the Christians, being in Guachoya in the seede time, the Indians, for feare of them, durst not come to sow the grounds of Nilco; and they knew not thereabout any other countrie where any maiz was; and that was the most fruitfull soile that was thereaway, and where they had most hope to finde it. Every one was confounded, and the most part thought it bad counsell to come backe from the river of Daycao, and not to have followed their fortunie, going that way that went over land. For by sea it seemed impossible to save themselves, unlesse God would worke a miracle for them; for there was neither pilot nor sea-chart; neither did they know where the river entred into the sea; neither had they notice of it; neither had they any thing wherewith to make sailes; nor any store of enequeem, which is a grasse whereof they make okam, which grew there: and that which they found, they saved to calke the pinaces with-all; neither had they any thing to pitch them withall; neither could they make ships of such substance, but that any storme would put them in great danger; and they feared much it would fall out with them, as it did with Pamphilo de Narvaez, which was cast away upon that coast: and above all other it troubled them most, that they could finde no maiz; for without it they could not bee sustained, nor could doe any thing that they had neede of. All of them were put to great confusion. Their chiefe remedy was to commit themselves to God, and to beseech Him that He would direct them the way that they might save their lives. And it pleased Him of His goodnesse, that the Indians of Nilco came peaceable, and told them, that two daies journey from thence, neere unto the Great River, were two townes, whereof the Christians had no notice, and that the province was called Minoya, and was a fruitfull soile; that, whether at this present there was any maiz or no, they knew not, because they had warre with them; but that they would be very glad, with the favour of the Christians, to goe and spoyle them. The
Governour sent a captaine thither with horsemen and footmen, and the Indians of Nilco with him. Hee came to Minoya, and found two great townes seated in a plaine and open soile, halfe a league distant, one in sight of another, and in them he tooke many Indians, and found great store of maiz. Presently he lodged in one of them, and sent word to the Governour what hee had found; wherewith they were all exceeding glad. They departed from Nilco in the beginning of December, and all that way, and before from Chilano, they endured much trouble; for they passed through many waters, and many times it rained with a northren winde, and was exceeding cold, so that they were in the open field with water over and underneath them; and when at the end of their daies journey they found drie ground to rest upon, they gave great thanks to God. With this trouble almost all the Indians that served them died. And after they were in Minoya, many Christians also died; and the most part were sicke of great and dangerous diseases, which had a splice of the lethargie. At this place died Andrew de Vasconcelos, and two Portugals of Elvas, which were very neere him, which were brethren, and by their surname called Sotis. The Christians lodged in one of the townes, which they liked best, which was fensed about, and distant a quartuer of a league from the great river. The maiz that was in the other towne was brought thither, and in all it was esteemed to bee six thousand hanegs or bushels. And there was the best timber to make ships that they had seene in all the land of Florida; wherefore all of them gave God great thankes for so singular a favour, and hoped that that which they desired would take effect, which was, that they might safely bee conducted into the land of the Christians.
CHAPTER XXXVI.

How there were seven brigandines builded, and how they departed from Minoya.

As soone as they came to Minoya, the Governor commanded them to gather all the chaines together, which everie one had to lead Indians in; and to gather al the yron which they had for their provision, and al the rest that was in the camp, and to set up a forge to make nailes, and commanded them to cut downe timber for the brigandines. And a Portugall of Ceuta, who, having bin a prisoner in Fez, had learned to saw timber with a long saw, which for such purposes they had carried with them, did teach others, which helped him to saw timber. And a Genowis, whom it pleased God to preserve (for without him they had never come out of the countrie: for there was never another that could make ships but hee), with four or five other Biscaine carpenters, which hewed his plancks and other timbers, made the brigandines. And two calkers, the one of Genua, the other of Sardinia, did calke them with the tow of an hearb like hempe, whereof before I have made mention, which there is named enequen. And because there was not enough of it, they calked them with the flaxe of the countrie, and with the mantles, which they ravelled for that purpose. A cooper which they had among them fell sicke, and was at the point of death: and there was none other that had any skill in that trade. It pleased God to send him his health; and albeit he was verie weake, and could not labour, yet fifteen daies before they departed, he made for every brigandine two halfe hogsheads, which the mariners call quarterets, because foure of them hold a pipe of water. The Indians which dwelt two daies jornie above the river, in a province called
Taguanate, and likewise those of Nilco and Guacoya, and others their neighbours, seeing the brigandines in making thinking, because their places of refuge are in the water, that they were to goe to seeke them, and because the Governour demanded mantles of them, as necessarie for sailes, came many times, and brought many mantles, and great store of fish. And for certaine it seemed that God was willing to favour them in so great necessitie, moving the minds of the Indians to bring them: for to goe to take them they were never able. For in the towne where they were, as soone as winter came in, they were so inclosed andcompassed with water, that they could go no farther by land then a league and a league and an half. And if they would goe farther, they could carrie no horses, and without them they were not able to fight with the Indians, because they were many; and so many for so many on foote they had the advantage of them by water and by land, because they were more apt and lighter, and by reason of the disposition of the countrie, which was according to their desire for the use of their warre. They brought also some cords, and those which wanted for cables were made of the barkes of mulberrie trees. They made stirrops of wood, and made ankers of their stirrops. In the moneth of March, when it had not rained a moneth before, the river grew so big, that it came to Nilco, which was nine leagues off: and on the other side the Indians said, that it reached other nine leagues into the land. In the towne where the Christians were, which was somewhat high ground, where they could best goe, the water reached to the stirrops. They made certaine rafts of timber, and laid manie boughes upon them, whereon they set their horses, and in the houses they did the like. But seeing that nothing prevailed, they went up to the lofts; and if they went out of the houses, it was in canoes, or on horseback in those places where the ground was hiest. So they were two moneths,
and could doe nothing, during which time the river decreased not.

The Indians ceased not to come unto the brigantines as they were wont, and came in canoes. At that time the Governour feared they would set upon him. Hee commanded his men to take an Indian secretly of those that came to the towne, and to stay him till the rest were gone: and they tooke one. The Governour commanded him to bee put to torture, to make him confess whether the Indians did practise any treason or no. Hee confessed that the caciques of Nilco, Guachoya, and Taguanate, and others, which in al were about twenty caciques, with a great number of people, determined to come upon him; and that three daies before, they would send a great present of fish to colour their great treason and malice, and on the verie day they would send some Indians before with another present. And these, with those which were our slaves, which were of their conspiracie also, should set the houses on fire, and first of all possesse themselves of the lances which stood at the doores of the houses; and the caciques with all their men should bee neere the towne in ambush in the wood, and when they saw the fire kindled, should come and make an end of the conquest.

The Governour commanded the Indian to be kept in a chaine, and the selfe same day that he spake of, there came thirty Indians with fish. Hee commanded their right hands to be cut off, and sent them so backe to the cacique of Guachoya, whose men they were. He sent him word, that he and the rest should come when they would, for he desired nothing more, and that hee should know that they thought not any thing which he knew not before they thought of it. Here-upon they all were put in a very great feare. And the caciques of Nilco and Taguanate came to excuse themselves; and a few daies after came he of Guachoya, and a principal Indian and his subject said, he knew by certaine information, that the caciques of Nilco and Taguanate were agreed
to come and make warre upon the Christians. As soone as the Indians came from Nilco, the Governour examined them, and they confessed it was true. Hee delivered them presently to the principall man of Guachooya, which drew them out of the towne and killed them. Another day came some from Taguanate, and confessed it likewise. The Governour commanded their right hands and noses to be cut off, and sent them to the cacique, wherewith they of Guachooya remained very well contented; and they came oftentimes with presents of mantles, and fish, and hogs, which bred in the countrie of some swine that were lost by the way the last yeere. As soone as the waters were slaked, they persuadde the Governour to send men to Taguanate. They came and brought canoes, wherein the footemen were conveyed downe the river, and a captaine with horsemen went by land; and the Indians of Guachooya, which guided him till they came to Taguanate, assaulted the towne, and took many men and women, and mantles, which, with those that they had alreadie, were sufficient to supplie their want.

The brigandines being finished in the moneth of June, the Indians having told us that the river increased but once a yeere, when the snowes did melt, in the time wherein I mentioned it had alreadie increased, being now in sommer, and having not rained a long time, it pleased God that the flood came up to the towne to secke the brigandines, from whence they carried them by water to the river; which, if they had gone by land, had been in danger of breaking and splitting their keeles, and to bee all undone; because that for want of iron the spikes were short, and the planckes and timber were very weake. The Indians of Minoya, during the time that they were there, came to serve them (being driven thereunto by necessity), that of the maiz which they had taken from them, they would bestow some crummes upon them. And because the countrie was fertill, and the people used to feed of maiz, and the Christians had gotten all
from them that they had, and the people were many, they were not able to sustaine themselves. Those which came to the towne were so weake and feeble, that they had no flesh left on their bones; and many came and died neere the towne for pure hunger and weakenesse. The Governour commanded upon grievous punishments to give them no maiz. Yet, when they saw that the hoggis wanted it not, and that they had yeelded themselves to serve them, and considering their miserie and wretchednes, having pity of them, they gave them part of the maiz which they had. And when the time of their embarkment came, there was not sufficient to serve their owne turnes. That which there was, they put into the brigandines, and into great canoes tied two and two together. They shipped twenty-two of the best horses that were in the camp, the rest they made dried flesh of; and dressed the hoggis which they had in like manner. They departed from Minoya the second day of Julie, 1543.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

As the Christians went downe the great river on their voyage, the Indians of Quigalta did set upon them, and what was the success thereof.

The day before they departed from Minoya, they determined to dismisse al the men and women of the countrie, which they had detained as slaves to serve them, save some hundred, little more or lesse, which the Governour embarked, and others whom it pleased him to permit. And because there were many men of qualitie, whom he could not deny that which he granted to others, he used a policy, saying, that they might serve them as long as they were in the river, but when they came to the sea, they must send them away
for want of water, because they had but few vessels. He
told his friends in secret, that they should carrie theirs to
Nueva Espanna. And all those whom hee bare no good will
unto (which were the greater number), ignorant of that which
was hidden from them, which afterward time discovered,
thinking it inhumanitie for so little time of service, in reward
of the great service that they had done them, to carrie them
with them, to leave them slaves to other men out of their
owne countries; left five hundred men and women; among
whom were many boies and girls, which spake and under-
stood the Spanish tongue. The most of them did nothing
but weepe, which mooved great compassion; seeing that all
of them with good will would have become Christians, and
were left in state of perdition. There went from Minoya
three hundred and twenty-two Spaniards, in seven brigan-
dines, well made, save that the plankes were thin, because
the nailes were short, and were not pitched, nor had any
decks to keep the water from comming in. In stead of decks
they laid planks, whereon the mariners might runne to trim
their sailes, and the people might refresh themselves above
and below. The Governour made his captaines, and gave to
every one his brigandine, and took their oth and their word,
that they would obey him, untill they came to the land of
the Christians. The Governour tooke one of the brigandines
for himself, which he best liked. The same day that they
departed from Minoya, they passed by Guachoya, where the
Indians tarried for them in canoes by the river. And on the
shore, they had made a great arbour with boughes; they
desired him to come on shore, but he excused himselfe, and
so went along. The Indians in their canoes accompanied
him; and comming where an arme of the river declined on
the right hand, they said, that the province of Quigalta was
neere unto that place, and importuned the Governour to set
upon him, and that they would aide him. And because they
had said, that he dwelt three daies journic downe the river,
the Governour supposed that they had plotted some treason against him, and there left them; and went downe with the greatest force of the water. The current was very strong, and with the helpe of ores, they went very swiftly. The first day they landed in a wood on the left hand of the river, and at night they withdrew themselves to the brigandines. The next day they came to a towne, where they went on shore, and the people that was in it durst not tarrie. A woman that they tooke there being examined, said, that that towne belonged to a cacique named Huasene, subject to Quigalta, and that Quigalta tarried for them below in the river with many men. Certaine horsemen went thither, and found some houses, wherein was much maiz. Immediately more of them went thither and tarried there one day, in which they did beate out, and tooke as much maiz as they needed. While they were there, many Indians came from the nether part of the river, and on the other side right against them, somewhat carelessly set themselves in order to fight.

The Governour sent in two canoes the crossebowmen that he had, and as many more as could goe in them. They ran away, and seeing the Spaniards could not overtake them, they returned backe, and tooke courage; and comming nearer, making an outcrie, they threatened them; and as soone as they departed thence, they went after them, some in canoes, and some by land along the river; and getting before, comming to a towne that stood by the rivers side, they joyned altogether, making a shew that they would tarrie there. Everie brigandine towed a canoe fastened to their sternes for their particular service. Presently there entred men into everie one of them, which made the Indians to flie, and burned the towne. The same day they presently landed in a great field, where the Indians durst not tarrie. The next day there were gathered together an hundred canoes, among which were some that carried sixty and seventy men; and the principall mens canoes had their tilts, and plumes
of white and red feathers for their ensignes; and they came within two crossebow shot of the brigandines, and sent three Indians in a small canoe with a fained message, to view the manner of the brigandines, and what weapons they had. And comming to the side of the Governours brigandine, one of the Indians entred, and said:

_That the cacique of Quigalta, his lord, sent him his commendations, and did let him understand, that all that the Indians of Guachoya had told him concerning himselfe was false, and that they had incensed him, because they were his enemies; that he was his servant, and should find him so._

The Governour answered him, that he beleaved all that he said was true, and willed him to tell him, that he esteemed his friendship very much. With this answer they returned to the place where the rest in their canoes were waiting for them; and from thence all of them fell downe, and came neere the Spaniards, shouting aloud, and threatning of them. The Governour sent John de Guzman, which had been a captaine of footemen in Florida, with fifteen armed men in canoes, to make them give way. As soone as the Indians sawe them come towards them, they divided themselves into two parts, and stood still till the Spaniards came neie them; and when they were come neere them, they joyned together on both sides, taking John de Guzman in the middest, and them that came first with him, and with great furie borded them: and as their canoes were bigger, and many of them leaped into the water to stay them, and to lay hold on the canoes of the Spaniards, and overwhelme them; so presently they over-whelmed them. The Christians fell into the water, and with the weight of their armour sunke downe to the bottome; and some few, that by swimming or holding by the canoe could have saved themselves, with oares, and staves, which they had, they strooke them on the head and made them sinke. When they of the brigandines saw the overthrow, though they went about to succour them, yet through the current of the river they could
not goe backe. Foure Spaniards fled to the brigandine that was neerer to the canoes; and only these escaped of those that came among the Indians. They were eleven that died there; among whom John de Guzman was one, and a sonne of Don Carlos, called John de Vargas; the rest also were persons of account, and men of great courage. Those that escaped by swimming, said, that they saw the Indians enter the canoe of John de Guzman at the sterne of one of their canoes, and whether they carried him away dead or alive, they could not certainly tell.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Which declareth how they were pursued by the Indians.

The Indians, seeing that they had gotten the victorie, tooke such courage, that they assaulted them in the brigandines, which they durst not doe before. They came first to that brigandine wherein Calderon went for captaine, and was in the rereward, and at the first volie of arrowes they wounded twenty-five men. There were only foure armed men in this brigandine; these did stand at the brigandines side to defend it. Those that were unarmed, seeing how they hurt them, left their oares and went under the deck; whereupon the brigandine began to crosse, and to goe where the current of the streame carried it. One of the armed men seeing this, without the commandement of the captaine, made a footman to take an oare and stirre the brigandine, hee standing before him and defending him with his target. The Indians came no neerer then a bowshot, from whence they offended and were not offended, receiving no hurt; for

1 "Os que nadando escaparam disseram que aos Indios vieram estar com Joam de Guzman pella popa de húa almadia sua," etc.
in every brigandine was but one crossebow, and those which wee had were very much out of order, so that the Christians did nothing else but stand for a butte to receive their arrows. Having left this brigandine they went to another; and fought with it halfe anoure; and so from one to another they fought with them all. The Christians had mattes to lay under them, which were double, and so close and strong, that no arrow went thorow them. And as soone as the Indians gave them leisure, they fensed the brigandines with them. And the Indians seeing that they could not shoote levell, shot their arrowes at random up into the aire, which fell into the brigandines and hurt some of the men; and not therewith contented, they sought to get to them which were in the canoes with the horses. Those of the brigandines environed them to defend them, and tooke them among them. Thus seeing themselves much vexed by them, and so wearied that they could no longer endure it, they determined to travell all the night following, thinking to get beyond the countrie of Quigalta, and that they would leave them; but when they thought least of it, supposing they had now left them, they heard very neere them so great outeries, that they made them deafe, and so they followed us all that night and the next day till noone, by which time we were come into the countrie of others, whom they desired to use us after the same manner: and so they did.

The men of Quigalta returned home; and the other in fiftie canoes fought with us a whole day and a night; and they entred one of the brigandines that came in the rereward by the canoe which she had at her sterne, and tooke away a woman which they found in it, and afterward hurt some of the men of the brigandines. Those which came with the horses in the canoes, being wareie with rowing night and day, lingered behind; and presently the Indians came upon them, and they of the brigandines tarried for them. The Governour resolved to goe on shore and to kill
the horses, because of the slow way which they made because of them. As soone as they saw a place convenient for it, they went thither and killed the horses, and brought the flesh of them to drie it aboord. Four or five of them remained on shore alive; the Indians went unto them after the Spaniards were embarked. The horses were not acquainted with them, and began to neigh, and runne up and downe in such sort, that the Indians, for feare of them, leaped into the water, and getting into their canoes went after the brigandines, shooting cruelly at them. They followed us that evening and the night following till the next day at tenne of the clocke, and then returned up the river. Presently, from a small towne that stood upon the river, came seven canoes, and followed us a little way downe the river, shooting at us; but seeing they were so few that they could doe us but little harme, they returned to their towne. From thence forward, untill they came to the sea, they had no encounter. They sailed downe the river seventeene daies, which may be two hundred and fifty leagues journey, little more or lesse; and neere unto the sea the river is divided into two armes; each of them is a league and an halfe broad.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

How they came unto the sea: and what happened unto them in all their voyage.

Halfe a league before they came to the sea, they came to anker to rest themselves there about a day; for they were very weary with rowing, and out of heart. For by the space of many daies they had eaten nothing but parched and sod-
den mais; which they had by allowance every day, an head-
peece full by strike\(^1\) for every three men. While they rode
there at anker, seven canoes of Indians came to set upon
those which they brought with them. The Governour com-
manded armed men to go aboord them, and to drive them
farther off. They came also against them by land through a
thick wood and a moorish ground, and had staves with very
sharp forked heads made of the bones of fishes, and fought
very valiantly with us, which went out to encounter them.
And the other that came in canoes with their arrowes staied
for them that came against them, and at their comming, both
those that were on land and those in the canoes wounded
some of us. And seeing us come neere them, they turned
their backs, and like swift horses among footemen gat away
from us, making some returns, and reuniting themselves
together, going not past a bow shot off; for in so retiring they
shot, without receiving any hurt of the Christians. For though
they had some bowes, yet they could not use them; and brake
their armes with rowing to overtake them. And the Indians
easily in their compasse went with their canoes, staying and
wheeling about as it had been in a skirmish; perceiving that
those that came against them could not offend them. And
the more they strove to come neere them, the more hurt they
received. As soone as they had driven them farther off,
they returned to the brigandines. They staied two daies
there, and departed from thence unto the place where the
arme of the river entreth into the sea. They sounded in
the river neere unto the sea, and found forty fathoms water.
They staied there. And the Governour commanded al and
singular persons to speake their minds touching their voyaige,
whether it were best to crosse over to Nueva Espanna, com-
mitting themselves to the hie sea, or whether they should

\(^1\) A strike, or strickle, is an instrument used for scraping off the surface
of a measure of grain to a level with the top. The original word is
arrasado, i.e., rased or smoothed.
keepe along the coast. There were sundry opinions touching this matter; wherein John Danusco, which presumed much, and tooke much upon him in the knowledge of navigation and matters of the sea, although hee had but little experience, mooved the Governour with his talke; and his opinion was seconded by some others. And they affirmed, that it was much better to passe by the hie sea, and crosse the gulfe, which was three of foure parts the lesser travell; because in going along the coast, they went a great way about, by reason of the compasse which the land did make. John Danusco said, that he had seene the sea card, and that from the place where they were, the coast ran east and west unto Rio de las Palmas; and from Rio de las Palmas to Nueva Espanna from north to south; and therefore in sailing alwaies in sight of land would bee a great compassing about and spending of much time; and that they would be in great danger to be overtaken with winter before they should get to the land of the Christians; and that in ten or twelve daies space, having good weather, they might bee there in crossing over. The most part were against this opinion, and said, that it was more safe to go along the coast, though they staied the longer, because their ships were very weake and without decks, so that a very little storme was enough to cast them away; and if they should be hindred with calmes, or contrarie weather, through the small store of vessels which they had to carrie water in, they should likewise fall into great danger; and that although the ships were such as they might venture in them, yet having neither pilot nor sea card to guide themselves, it was no good counsell to crosse the gulfe. This opinion was confirmed by the greatest part, and they agreed to go along the coast. At the time wherein they sought to depart from thence, the cable of the anker of the Governours brigandine brake, and the anker remained in the river. And albeit they were neere the shore, yet it was so deepe that the divers diving many times could never find it, which caused
great sadness in the Governour, and in all those that went with him in his brigandine. But with a grindstone which they had, and certaine bridles which remained to some of the gentlemen and men of worship which had horses, they made a weight which served instead of an anker.

The 18 of July, they went fowrth to sea with faire and prosperous weather for their voyage. And seeing that they were gone two or three leagues from the shore, the captaines of the other brigandines overtooke them, and asked the Governour wherefore he did put off from the shore? and that if he would leave the coast, he should say so; and he should not do it without the consent of all; and that if hee did otherwise, they would not follow him, but that every one would doe what seemed best unto himselfe. The Governour answered, that hee would doe nothing without their counsell, but that hee did beare off from the land to saile the better and safer by night; and that the next day when time served, he would returne to the sight of land againe. They sailed with a reasonable good wind that day and the night following, and the next day till evening song, alwaies in fresh water; whereat they wondred much, for they were verie farre from land. But the force of the current of the river is so great, and the coast there is so shallow and gentle, that the fresh water entrecht farre into the sea. That evening on their right hand they saw certaine creekes, whither they went, and rested there that night: where John Danusco with his reasons wonne them at last, that all consented and agreed to commit themselves to the maine sea, alleging, as he had done before, that it was a great advantage, and that their voyage would be much shorter. They sailed two daies, and

---

1 i.e., the Governour and John Danusco. The passage in the original stands thus: “Ho Governador & coelle João Danusco cõ seus bragantins ao mar se meterã, & todos os seguirã; & vêdo q’ de trr’a duas ou tres legoas desuuiados estavã, os capitaes dos outros bragantins os alcãaram,” etc.
when they would have come to sight of land, they could not, for the winde blew from the shore. On the fourth daie, seeing their fresh water began to faile, fearing necessitie and danger, they all complained of John Danusco and of the Governour that followed his counsell: and every one of the captaines said, that they would no more goe from the shore, though the Governour went whither he would. It pleased God that the winde changed, though but a little, and at the end of foure daies after they had put to sea, being alreadie destitute of water, by force of rowing they got within sight of land, and with great trouble recovered it, in an open roade. That evening the winde came to the south, which on that coast is a crosse winde, and drave the brigandines against the shore, because it blew very hard, and the anchors were so weake that they yeelded and began to bend. The Governour commanded all men to leape into the water, and going between them and the shore, and thrusting the brigandines into the sea as soone as the wave was past, they saved them till the winde ceased.

CHAPTER XL.

_How they lost one another by a storme, and afterward came together in a creeke._

In the bay where they rode, after the tempest was past, they went on shore, and with mattockes which they had, they dugge certaine pits, which grew full of fresh water, where they filled all the cask which they had. The next day they departed thence, and sailed two daies, and entred into a creeke like unto a poole, fenced from the south winde which then did blow and was against them; and there they
staied foure daies, not being able to get out; and when the sea was calme they rowed out. They sailed that day, and toward evening the winde grew so strong that it drave them on the shore, and they were sore that they had put forth from the former harbour; for as soone as night approched, a storme began to rise in the sea, and the winde still waxed more and more violent with a tempest. The brigandines lost one another; two of them, which bare more into the sea, entred into an arme of the sea, which pearced into the land, two leagues beyond the place where the other were that night. The five which staied behinde, being alwaies a league and halfe a league the one from the other, met together, without any knowledge the one of the other, in a wilde roade, where the winde and the waves drove them on shore; for their anchors did streighten and came home; and they could not rule their oares, putting seven or eight men to every oare, which rowed to seaward: and all the rest leaped into the water, and when the wave was past that drave the brigandine on shore, they thrust it againe into sea with all the diligence and might that they had. Others, while another wave was in coming, with bowles laved out the water that came in overboord. While they were in this tempest, in great feare of being cast away in that place, from midnight forward they endured an intollerable torment of an infinite swarne of moskitoes which fell upon them, which, as soone as they had stung the flesh, it so infected it, as though they had bin venomous. In the morning the sea was asswaged and the wind slaked, but not the muskitoes; for the sailes which were white seemed blacke with them in the morning. Those which rowed, unlesse others kept them away, were not able to row. Having passed the seare and danger of the storme, beholding the deformities of their faces, and the blowes which they gave themselves to drive them away, one of them laughed at another. They met all together in the creek where the two brigandines were, which outwent their fellowes.
was found a skumme, which they call copee, which the sea casteth up, and it is like pitch, wherewith in some places where pitch is wanting they pitch their ships: there they pitched their brigandines. They rested two daies, and then eftsoones proceeded on their voyage. They sailed two daies more, and landed in a bay or arme of the sea, where they staied two daies. The same day that they went from thence, sixe men went up in a canoe toward the head of it, and could not see the end of it. They put out from thence with a south winde, which was against them; but because it was little, and for the great desire they had to shorten their voyage, they put out to sea by force of oares, and for all that made very little way with great labour in two daies, and went under the lee of a small island into an arme of the sea, which compassed it about. While they were there, there fell out such weather, that they gave God many thankes, that they had found out such an harbour. There was great store of fish in that place, which they tooke with nets which they had, and hookes. Heere a man cast an hooke and a line into the sea, and tied the end of it to his arme, and a fish caught it, and drew him into the water unto the necke; and it pleased God that hee remembred himselfe of a knife that he had, and cut the line with it. There they abode fourteene daies; and at the end of them it pleased God to send them faire weather, for which with great devotion they appointed a procession, and went in procession along the strand, beseecching God to bring them to a land where they might serve him in better sort.
CHAPTER XLI.

How they came to the river of Panuco in Nueva Espanna.

In all the coast wheresoever they digged, they found fresh water: there they filled their vessels, and the procession being ended, embarked themselves, and going alwaies in sight of the shore, they sailed sixe daies. John Danusco said that it would doe well to beare out to seaward, for he had scene the sea card, and remembred that from Rio de las Palmas forward the coast did runne from north to south, and thitherto they had runne from east to west; and in his opinion, by his reckoning, Rio de las Palmas could not be farre off from where they were. That same night they put to sea, and in the morning they saw palme leaves floting, and the coast, which ranne north and south: from midday forward they saw great mountaines, which untill then they had not seene; for from this place to Puerto de Spiritu Santo, where they first landed in Florida, was a very plaine and low countrey; and therfore it cannot be descried, unlesse a man come very neere it. By that which they saw, they thought that they had overshot Rio de Palmas that night, which is sixty leagues from the river of Panuco, which is in Nueva Espanna. They assembled all together, and some said it was not good to saile by night, lest they should overshoot the river of Panuco; and others said, it was not well to lose time while it was favourable, and that it could not be so neere that they should passe it that night: and they agreed to take away halfe the sailes, and so saile all night. Two of the brigandines, which sailed that night with all their sailes, by breake of day had overshot the river of Panuco without seeing it. Of the five that came behind, the first that came unto it was that wherein Calderan was
captaine. A quarter of a league before they came at it, and before they did see it, they saw the water muddie, and knew it to be fresh water; and comming right against the river, they saw, where it entred into the sea, that the water brake upon a shold. And because there was no man there that knew it, they were in doubt whether they should goe in, or goe along, and they resolved to goe in; and before they came unto the current, they went close to the shore, and entred into the port; and as soone as they were come in, they saw Indian men and women apparelled like Spaniards, whom they asked in what countrey they were? They answered in Spanish, that it was the river of Panuco, and that the towne of the Christians was fifteen leagues up within the land. The joy that all of them received upon these newes cannot sufficiently be expressed, for it seemed unto them that at that instant they were borne again. And many went on shore and kissed the ground, and kneeling on their knees, with lifting up their hands and eyes to heaven, they all ceased not to give God thankes.

Those which came after, as soone as they saw Calderan come to an anchor with his brigandine in the river, presently went thither, and came into the haven. The other two brigandines which had overshot the place, put to sea to returne backe to seeke the rest, and could not doe it, because the winde was contrarie and the sea grown; they were afraid of being cast away, and recovering the shore they cast anchor. While they rode there a storme arose, and seeing that they could not abide there, much lesse endure at sea, they resolved to runne on shore; and as the brigandines were but small, so did they draw but little water; and where they were it was a sandie coast. By which occasion the force of their sailes drave them on shore, without any hurt of them that were in them. As those that were in the port of Panuco at this time were in great joy, so these felt a double griefe in their hearts, for they knew not what was become
of their fellowes, nor in what countrey they were, and feared it was a countrey of Indian enemies. They landed two leagues below the port; and when they saw themselves out of the danger of the sea, every one tooke of that which he had as much as he could carry on his backe; and they travelled up into the countrey, and found Indians, which told them where their fellowes were, and gave them good entertainment, wherewith their sadnes was turned into joy, and they thanked God most humbly for their deliverance out of so many dangers.

CHAPTER XLII.

How they came to Panuco, and how they were received of the inhabitants.

From the time that they put out of Rio Grande to the sea, at their departure from Florida, until they arrived in the river of Panuco, were fifty-two daies. They came into the river of Panuco the 10 of September 1543. They went up the river with their brigandines. They travelled four daies; and because the wind was but little, and many times it served them not, because of the many turnings which the river maketh, and the great current, drawing them up by towing, and that in many places; for this cause they made very little way, and with great labour; and seeing the execution of their desire to be deferred, which was to come among Christians, and to see the celebration of divine service, which so long time they had not seene, they left the brigandines with the mariners, and went by land to Panuco. All of them were apparrelled in deeres skins, tanned and died blacke, to wit, cotes, hose, and shooes. When they came to Panuco,
presently they went to the church to pray and give God thankes that so miraculously had saved them.

The townesmen, which before were advertised by the Indians, and knew of their arrival, caried some of them to their houses, and entreated them whom they knew and had acquaintance of, or because they were their countrimen. The Alcalde mayor tooke the Governour home to his house, and commanded al the rest, as soone as they came, to be lodged six and six, and ten and ten, according to the habilitie of every townesman. And all of them were provided for by their hostes of many hennes and bread of maiz, and fruites of the countrie, which are such as be in the isle of Cuba, whereof before I have spoken.

The towne of Panuco may containe above seventy families; the most of their houses are of lime and stone, and some made of timber, and all of them are thatched. It is a poore countrie, and there is neither gold nor silver in it; the inhabitants live there in great abundance of victuals and servants. The richest have not above five hundred crownes rent a yeere, and that is in cotton clothes, hennes, and maiz, which the Indians, their servants, doe give them for tribute. There arrived there of those that came out of Florida, three hundred and eleven Christians. Presently, the Alcalde mayor sent one of the townsmen in post to advertise the viceroy, Don Antonio de Mendoça, which was resident in Mexico, that of the people that went with Don Ferdinando de Soto to discover and conquer Florida, three hundred and eleven men were arrived there: that seeing they were imploied in his majesties service, he would take some order to provide for them; whereat the viceroy and all the inhabitants of Mexico wondred. For they thought they were miscarried, because they had travelled so farre within the maine land of Florida, and had no newes of them for so long a time; and it seemed a wonderfull thing unto them how they could save themselves so long among infidels, without any
fort, wherein they might fortifie themselves, and without any other succour at all. Presently the viceroy sent a warrant, wherein hee commanded, that whithersoever they sent, they should give them victuals, and as many Indians for their cariages as they needed; and where they would not furnish them, they might take those things that were necessarie perforce, without incurring any danger of law. This warrant was so readilie obeyed, that by the way, before they came to the townes, they came to receive them with hennes and victuals.

CHAPTER XLIII.

Of the favour which they found at the hands of the Viceroy, and of the inhabitants of the citie of Mexico.

From Panuco to the great citie Temistitan Mexico, is sixty leagues, and other sixty from Panuco to the Port de Vera Cruz, where they take shipping for Spaine, and those that come from Spaine do land to go for Nueva Espanna. These three townes stand in a triangle; to wit, Vera Cruz to the south, Panuco to the north, and Mexico to the west, sixty leagues asunder. The countrie is so inhabited with Indians, that from towne to towne, those which are farthest, are but a league and halfe a league asunder. Some of them that came from Florida staied a moneth in Panuco to rest themselves, others fiftenee daies, and every one as long as he listed; for there was none that shewed a sower countenance.

1 "Gram cidade de Mestitam Mexico" in the original. The ancient name of the city of Mexico was properly Tenochtitlan. Cortes, in his third Despatch to the Emperor Charles the Fifth, calls it the great city of Temixitan—"la gran ciudad de Temixitan", and applies the name Mexico to the province. Bernal Diaz, in his Conquista de la Nueva España, ch. 88, speaks of it as "the great city of Tenustitlan Mexico".
to his guests, but rather gave them any thing that they had, and seemed to be grieved when they took their leave; which was to be beleved. For the victuals, which the Indians doe pay them for tribute, are more than they can spend; and in that towne is no commerce; and there dwelt but few Spaniards there, and they were glad of their companie. The Alcalde mayor divided all the Emperours clothes which he had (which there they pay him for his tribute) among those that would come to receive them. Those which had shirts of maile left were glad men, for they had a horse for one shirt of maile. Some horded themselves; and such as could not (which were the greatest part) tooke their journie on foote; in which they were well received of the Indians that were in the townes, and better served then they could have been in their owne houses, though they had been well to live. For if they asked one hen of an Indian, they brought them foure; and if they asked any of the countrie fruit, though it were a league off, they ran presently for it. And if any Christian found himself evill at ease, they carried him in a chaire from one towne to another.

In whatsoever towne they came, the cacique, by an Indian which carried a rod of justice in his hand, whom they call Tapile, that is to say, a sergeant, commanded them to provide victuals for them, and Indians to beare burdens of such things as they had, and such as were needfull to carry them that were sick. The viceroy sent a Portugall twenty leagues from Mexico, with great store of sugar, raisons of the sunne, and conserves, and other things fit for sicke folkes, for such as had neede of them; and had given order to cloth them all at the Emperours charges. And their approch being knowne by the citizens of Mexico, they went out of the towne to receive them; and with great courtesie, requesting them in favour to come to their houses, every one carried such as hee met home with him, and clothed them every one the best they could; so that he which had the meanest apparrell
it cost above thirty ducats. As many as were willing to come to the viceroyes house he commanded to be appareled, and such as were persons of qualitie sate at his table; and there was a table in his house for as many of the meancer sort as would come to it; and he was presently informed who every one was, to shew him the courtesie that he deserved. Some of the conquerors did set both gentlemen and clowes at their owne table, and many times made the servant sit checke by checke by his master; and chiefly the officers and men of base condition did so, for those which had better education did enquire who every one was, and made difference of persons; but all did what they could with a good will, and every one told them whom they had in their houses, that they should not trouble themselves, nor thinke themselves the worse to take that which they gave them; for they had bin in the like case, and had bin relieved of others, and that this was the custome of that countrey. God reward them all, and God grant that those which it pleased Him to deliver out of Florida and to bring againe into Christendome, may serve Him; and unto those that died in that countrey, and unto all that beleve in Him and confesse His holy faith, God for His mercie sake grant the kingdome of heaven. Amen.

CHAPTER XLIV.

Which declareth some diversities and particularities of the land of Florida; and the fruite, and beasts, and fowles that are in that countrie.

From the port de Spiritu Santo, where they landed when they entred into Florida, to the province of Ocute, which may bee four hundred leagues, little more or lesse, is a verie plaine countrie, and hath many lakes and thicke woods, and
in some places they are of wild pine-trees; and is a weake soile: there is in it neither mountaine nor hill. The countrie of Ocute is more fat and fruitfull; it hath thinner woods, and very goodly meadows upon the rivers. From Ocute to Cutifachiqui may be one hundred and thirty leagues: eighty leagues thereof are desert, and have many groves of wild pine-trees. Through the wildernesse great rivers doe passe.

From Cutifachiqui to Xuala, may be two hundred and fifty leagues: it is al an hilly countrie. Cutifachiqui and Xuala stand both in plaine ground, hie, and have goodly medows on the rivers. From thence forward to Chiaha, Coça, and Talise, is plaine ground, dry, and fat, and very plentifull of ﬂnaiz. From Xuala to Tascaluça may be two hundred and fifty leagues. From Tascaluça to Rio Grande, or the great river, may be three hundred leagues: the countrie is low, and full of lakes. From Rio Grande forward, the countrie is hier and more champion, and best peopled of all the land of Florida. And along this river from Aquixo to Pacaha, and Coligoa, are one hundred and fifty leagues: the countrie is plaine, and the woods thinne, and in some places champion, very fruitfull and pleasant. From Coligoa to Autiamque are two hundred and fifty leagues of hillie countrie. From Autiamque to Aguacay may be two hundred and thirty leagues of plaine ground. From Aguacay to the river of Daycao one hundred and twenty leagues, all hillie country.

From the port de Spiritu Santo unto Apalache they travelled from east to west and northwest. From Cutifachiqui to Xuala from south to north. From Xuala to Coça from east to west. From Coça to Tascaluça, and to Rio Grande, as far as the provinces of Quizquiz and Aquixo from east to west. From Aquixo to Pacaha to the north. From Pacaha to Tulla from east to west: and from Tulla to Autiamque from north to south, to the province of Guachoya and Daycao.

1 Page 74 of the present edition.
The bread which they eate in all the land of Florida is of maiz, which is like course millet. And this maiz is common in all the islandes and West Indies from the Antiles forward. There are also in Florida great store of walnuts, and plummes, mulberries, and grapes. They sow and gather their maiz every one their several crop. The fruietes are common to all: for they grow abroad in the open fields in great abundance, without any neede of planting or dressing. Where there be mountaines, there be chestnuts: they are somewhat smaller then the chestnuts of Spaine. From Rio Grande westward, the walnuts differ from those that grow more eastward: for they are soft, and like unto acornes: and those which grow from Rio Grande to Puerto del Spiritu Santo, for the most part are hard; and the trees and walnuts in shew like those of Spaine. There is a fruit through all the countrie which groweth on a plant like ligoacan,1 which the Indians doe plant. The fruit is like unto peares riall:2 it hath a verie good smell, and an excellent taste. There groweth another plant in the open field, which beareth a fruit like unto strawberries, close to the ground, which hath a verie good taste. The plummes are of two kindes, red and gray, of the making and bignesse of nuts, and have three or foure stones in them.3 These are better then all the plummes of Spaine, and they make farre better prunes of them. In the grapes there is onlie want of dressing; for though they bee big, they have a great kirnell. All other fruits are very perfect, and lesse hurtfull then those of Spaine.

There are in Florida many beares, and Lyons,4 wolves, deere, dogges, cattes, martens, and conies.

There be many wild hennes as big as turkies, partridges small like those of Africa, cranes, duckes, pigeons, thrushes, and sparrows. There are certaine blacke birds5 bigger than

---

1 Ligoacan:—Lignum Guaiacum
2 Pears royal.
3 Prunus chicoa and P. hiemalis.  
4 See note at p. 97.
5 Perhaps the winter cow-bird—Molothrus pecoris.
sparrows, and lesser then stares. There are gosse hawkes, falcons, ierfalcons, and all fowles of prey that are in Spaine.

The Indians are well proportioned. Those of the plaine countries are taller of bodie and better shapen then those of the mountaine. Those of the inland have greater store of maiz, and commodities of the countrie, then those that dwell upon the sea coast. The countrie along the sea coast is barren and poore, and the people more warlike. The coast runneth from Puerto dèl Spiritu Santo to Apalache, east and west: and from Apalache to Rio de las Palmas from east to west: from Rio de las Palmas unto Nueva Espanna from north to south. It is a gentle coast, but it hath many sholdes, and great shelves of sand.

*Deo gratias.*

This Relation of the discoverie of Florida was printed in the house of Andrew de Burgos, Printer and Gentleman of the house of my Lord Cardinall the Infante.

It was finished the tenth of Februarie in the yeere one thousand, five hundred, fiftie and seven, in the noble and most loyall citie of Evora.

FINIS.
APPENDIX.
APPENDIX.

A RELATION OF WHAT TOOK PLACE DURING the expedition of Captain Soto; with particulars concerning the nature of the country through which he passed.

BY LUIS HERNANDEZ DE BIEDMA.¹

HAVING arrived at the port of Baya-Honda,² we landed six hundred and twenty men and two hundred and twenty-three horses. This operation was scarcely effected, when we were informed by one of the Indians who had been captured, that there was a Christian in the country who had accompanied the expedition of Panfilo de Narvaez; messengers were despatched in quest of this person, who was with a cacique living eight leagues distant from the harbour. We fell in with him on the way, for he was already coming to meet us. As soon as the cacique had learnt that we had

¹ This Biedma presented the above Relation to the King (Charles V) in person, in his council of the Indies, assembled in 1544; as appears by a decision, wherein it is stated that he accompanied Fernando de Soto in quality of Factor to his majesty. (Note by Muñoz.)

² That the port called Baya-Honda here and at page 174, is Espiritu Santo Bay, is evident from the concurrent testimony of the Portuguese author, and of Garcilaso de la Vega. The latter, indeed, describes the bay of Espiritu Santo in so many words as “una bahia honda y buena”—a deep and good bay. Hence it is possible that this name also was given to it at the time by the Spaniards, and if so, Biedma is the only narrator who has informed us of the fact. In the absence of the original Spanish, we are unable to detect whether any error has crept into the translation.
landed, he enquired of this Christian whether he wished to go in search of us, and upon his replying in the affirmative, he was sent by the cacique in company with nine Indians. He was naked like them; in his hand he carried a bow and arrows, and his body was painted like theirs. When the Christians perceived them, they supposed that they were natives who had come for the purpose of being spies on our troops, and accordingly marched to attack them; but the Indians fled over a neighbouring hill. The horsemen having overtaken them, gave an Indian a thrust with a lance, and the Christian also narrowly escaped with his life, for he spoke our language very imperfectly, having almost forgotten it; but it occurred to him to call upon our Lady, which circumstance assured us of his being a Christian. We conducted him to the Governor with great delight; he had been twelve years among these Indians, spoke their language, and had so accustomed himself to it, that he passed upwards of four days with us without being able to speak two words consecutively: to every word in Spanish, he added four or five in the language of the Indians: this continued until he had regained the use of our language. He was so ignorant of the country, that he knew not even by hearsay of what was twenty leagues distant. In fact, from the first moment, he told us that there was no gold in the country.

We all left the port of Baya-Honda for the purpose of penetrating into the interior, with the exception of twenty-six horsemen and sixty foot soldiers, who remained to guard the harbour until they should receive the Governor's orders to join him. We marched at first in a westerly direction, and then north-east; we had notice of a cacique, who, according to the report of the Indians, received tribute from all the natives: he was called Hurripacuxi, and lived about twenty leagues from the coast. From this place we continued our march, crossing swamps and rivers, for the distance of from fifteen to twenty leagues. We wished to repair
to a town, concerning which the Indians related marvellous things: amongst others, they pretended that when the inhabitants shouted, they caused the birds which were flying in the air to fall down. We came to this place, which was called Etocale, and was but a small village. We found in it some provisions; namely, maize, beans, and little dogs, which afforded no small relief to our party, who were famishing. We stayed here seven or eight days, during which several excursions were made in order to capture some Indians, who might serve us as guides into the province of Apalache, concerning which place there was much talk in the country. We caught three or four, but the most skilful of them only knew the country to the distance of two leagues round the village. We departed, taking the direction towards New Spain, and marching ten or twelve leagues from the coast. In the course of five or six days we passed through some hamlets, and then entered a village of moderate size, named Aguacalecuen; all the Indians had taken refuge in the woods. We stayed here five or six days in the hope of taking some Indians to serve us as guides. Ten or twelve women were captured, one of whom said that she was the daughter of the cacique: this induced the cacique himself to come to us in a friendly manner: he promised to give us some interpreters and guides, so that we might continue our march, but this promise he did not keep. We were obliged to take him along with us. After marching for six or seven days, we fell in with one hundred and fifty Indians, armed with bows and arrows, who came out against us with the intention of carrying off the cacique; we killed some of them, and took the others prisoners. Amongst these were some natives who had a knowledge of the interior; but on this subject they told the grossest falsehoods. We crossed a river which ran through a province called Veachile, and on the opposite shore we found some villages, which, although deserted, contained all that we wanted, namely, provisions.
We left there for a village called Aguile, situated on the borders of the province of Apalache, which is separated from the first-named place by a river, over which we threw a bridge, formed upon a great number of boats fastened one to another; we crossed the river with considerable difficulty, for the Indians who were drawn up on the shore defended the passage: as soon, however, as we reached the opposite side, they withdrew into a neighbouring village called Ivita- chuco, where they remained until we came in sight of the place. As soon as they saw us approach, they set fire to the village and fled.

The province of Apalache contains a great number of villages, but provisions are scarce. The province to which we were going was called Yustaga. We arrived at a village named Iniahico. On reaching this place, we thought that it was time to obtain some intelligence of those who had remained at the harbour, and to give them news of ourselves; for it was our intention now to penetrate so far into the interior, that it would be no longer possible for us to communicate with them, and we had already travelled one hundred and ten leagues from the spot where we had left them. The Governor accordingly sent orders for them to join us.

Departing hence, we went in search of the sea, which was nine leagues distant from the village where we now were. We came to the place on the coast where Panfilo de Narvaez had constructed vessels; we recognised the spot where the forge had been set up, and we saw a great number of bones of horses. The Indians told us that other Christians had built barques at this place. Juan de Añasco made several marks of recognition upon the trees along the sea shore. He had received the Governor’s orders to proceed in search of the soldiers who had remained at the harbour, and to make them come by land to the village where we were, whilst they (i.e., his own party) were to return by sea in two brigantines and a caravel, which they were to bring up to the province of
Apalache. In the mean time we were to wait at the place where we were now staying. Juan de Añasco sent the party by land, and he himself came by sea as the Governor had directed him. He encountered great dangers, for he observed that this coast was not such as he had viewed it from the land. In sailing, he did not recognize the spots which he had passed, for the shore was edged with small shallow creeks, where the water rose high at full tide, but at the ebb it remained perfectly dry. We built a pirogue, which put out to sea two leagues every day in order to watch for the arrival of the brigantines, and point out to them the spot where they ought to land. God granted a safe arrival to those who were expected both by sea and land.

As soon as the brigantines had arrived, the Governor gave orders for them to set sail again and search out a near harbour on the east side, to reconnoitre the coast and to see if the land came to a termination. The cavalier Francisco Maldonado, of Salamanca, embarked in the brigantines, sailed along the coast, put into all the bays and rivers that he saw, until he reached a river, the entrance into which was easy, a river, and which afforded a good harbour. There was an Indian village situate on the sea shore, and divers of the inhabitants came out to traffick with him; one of these natives he took, and then returned to where we were stationed, after having spent two months in this expedition. We found the time of our sojourn very long, owing to the reports that we had heard respecting the interior. When Maldonado arrived, the Governor told him that we were going in quest of that country, which, according to the Indians, was situate upon another sea: he ordered Maldonado to proceed to Cuba with the brigantines, on board of which was the Governor's wife, Doña Isabella de Bobadilla, and afterwards to bring them

---

1 In the absence of the original document, we can scarcely doubt that there is some mistake here either in the Spanish or the translation; for both the Portuguese author (ante pp. 24 and 111) and Garcilaso de la Vega
back as far as the river Saint Esprit (Espiritu Santo), whither we should repair, if in six months' time he heard no news of us. The brigantines sailed for Cuba, and we resumed our march towards the north, in order to verify the statements of the Indians. We travelled during five days in the midst of a desert, and at length came upon a broad and very rapid river, over which we could not construct a bridge owing to the force of the current: we made, however, a canoe, in which we crossed to the other side. We entered a province called Acapachiqui, where there was plenty of provisions for the sustenance of the Indians; we perceived some villages, but as the country was covered with extensive marshes, we could not reconnoitre all of them: we noticed also that in this country the houses of the Indians were differently constructed from those we had hitherto seen, being dug out of the earth, and having the appearance of caves; whilst all those previously observed had been covered with palm branches and straw. We continued our march, and came in sight of two rivers, over which we were obliged to construct bridges with pine trees lashed together, as we were wont to do on these occasions. We arrived at a province called Otoa, in which we found a very large village, the most considerable that we had yet seen; from thence we passed on to other villages of the same province, which might be distant a two days' march; we captured some Indians, who had no suspicion of us, nor had they been apprised of our arrival; others offered to come into our service, on condition that we should deliver up those of their tribes whom we had seized. The Governor consented to this, for they would not have been made prisoners if we had not had absolute need of guides and interpreters.

agree that Doña Isabel de Bobadilla had been left at Cuba; and in the corresponding passage in Garcilaso, it is distinctly stated that Maldonado was sent with the brigantines to visit Doña Isabel:—"Pocos días después de la venida de Diego Maldonado, le mandó el Governador, fuese a la Habana con los dos vergantines, que tenía a su cargo, y visitase a Doña Isabel de Bobadilla," etc.—La Florida del Inca, p. 102; edit. 1723.
We spent five or six days in passing through this province, which is called Chisi. These Indians treated us as well as their poverty allowed them; we then marched three days without finding a habitation, and at length entered a province called Altapaha. We discovered there a river, which did not flow towards the south, like those we had already passed; but it came from the east, and fell into the sea on the side where the licentiate Lucas d’Aillon had landed; this circumstance gave us more confidence in what the Indian had stated, and we were persuaded that all the lies which they had told us were truths. This province was well peopled, and all the inhabitants came to offer their services. The Governor having made some enquiries of them respecting the province of Cafitachyque, whither we were going, they answered that it was impossible for us to reach it, as there was no road leading to it, neither were there any provisions to be procured on the way; and that we should all perish from hunger. We set forward nevertheless, and came into the territories of the caciques named Ocute and Cofoqui; they supplied us with provisions, and told us that if we wished to make war upon the Queen of Cafitachyque, they would furnish us with everything necessary for the journey, but they gave us to understand that there was no road thither; that they held no communication with each other, because hostilities were going on; that they only saw each other when they were engaged in fighting from time to time, which they did always secretly and in ambush; and that it took from twenty to twenty-two days to reach there, during which they subsisted altogether on herbs and parched maize which they carried with them. Seeing, however, that we were determined upon going, they gave us eight hundred Indians to carry our provisions and baggage, as well as guides, who immediately took an easterly direction, and in this way we marched for three days. The Indian who deceived us said that in three days he would conduct us thither;
at the expiration of which, we began to perceive the falsity of this man; nevertheless the Governor continued to follow the route taken, because he had a foreboding (which indeed eventually came to pass) of the great want that we should have to endure. After three days we reached some huts; the Indians were already bewildered, and knew no longer what road to take; the Governor went in advance in order to search for one, but returned in despair at his ill success. We then proceeded half a league, until we came to a large river, when we were necessitated for the first time to eat the swine that we brought along with us; each man received for his allowance a pound of flesh, which was boiled in water without salt or anything to season it. The Governor sent a party to seek out a road in two opposite directions. One person proceeded up the river at the north-north-east side, and another descended it in the direction of south-south-east. He allowed ten days to each in going and returning, and directed them to give notice if they should discover any villages or a road. The explorer, who went towards the south-south-east, returned in four days with the news that he had found a small hamlet and some provisions; he brought three or four Indians, who spoke with the man who had deceived us; they understood each other, which was no small satisfaction to us, considering the extreme scarcity of interpreters in this country. They confirmed the lies which that Indian had told us, and we believed them because he made himself very easily understood by these Indians. We all set out in company immediately, to go and await the arrival in that small village of the messenger who had been on the other side; we remained there four or five days until we were all once more assembled; we found about fifty fanegas (bushels) of maize, a small quantity of meal of roasted maize, numerous mulberry trees loaded with mulberries, and some wild fruits.

We departed for the village of Cofitachyque, which
was two days’ march from this hamlet, and situated on
the banks of a river which we supposed to be that of Saint
Helena, whither the licentiate Ayllon had gone. When
we arrived there, the Queen sent to us one of her nieces,
who was carried in a litter by Indians, and appeared to
possess considerable authority; she gave us to understand
that she was well pleased at our arrival, and that she would
give us all that was in her power. She presented the Go-
vernor with a necklace of pearls of five or six rows, procured
for us canoes to pass the river, and assigned the half of the
village for our quarters. After having been in our company
three or four days, she escaped into the forest; the Governor
caused search to be made after her, but without success; he
then gave orders to break open a temple erected in this vil-
lage, wherein the chiefs of the country were interred. We
took out of it a vast quantity of pearls, which might amount
to six or seven arrobas,¹ but they were spoiled by having
been underground. We found also buried there a couple of
hatchets for felling wood, of Spanish manufacture, a chaplet
made of the seeds of the wild olive, and several small pearls
similar to those which are brought from Spain to barter with
the Indians. We supposed that they had procured all these
articles in trafficking with the party which had accompanied
the licentiate Ayllon. According to the report of these
Indians, the sea was distant thirty leagues; we likewise learnt
from them that Ayllon’s company had penetrated only a
short distance into the interior, that they had nearly always
followed the sea-coast, until the death of Ayllon, and that his
companions had destroyed each other, not being able to agree
in the choice of a leader. A great number died of starvation,
as we were informed by one of the soldiers who had remained
in the country. Out of six hundred men who had landed
with Ayllon, only fifty-seven escaped: this great loss was

¹ An arroba is a Spanish weight of twenty-five pounds.
mainly attributable to the shipwreck of a large vessel laden with provisions.

We remained in the village of this queen ten or eleven days, after which we agreed to go and explore the country and search for provisions, of which we had but very little left: we had to find subsistence for the Indians, the Christians, and the horses. We set forward with all expedition, taking the direction of the north. We marched during eight days through a poor country, in which few provisions were found, and came to a province called Xuala, which was thinly inhabited, because the soil is very barren; we found however some huts of Indians in the mountains. We ascended to the source of the great river whose course we had followed, and which we believed to be that of Saint Esprit (Espiritu Santo); we entered a village called Guasuli, where we were presented with several dogs and a little maize, for there was only a small quantity in the place. We continued our march during four days, and at length reached a village called China, where there was plenty of provisions; it is built on one of the islands of the river of Saint-Esprit, which are numerous and considerable close to its source. We found for the first time in this province fortified villages; the Indians make here a great quantity of nut oil; we remained twenty-six or twenty-seven days in order to rest the horses, which from want of food had become excessively wearied. We pursued our course along the banks of the river, and reached another province called Costehe, the villages of which are also built upon the islands of the river; we afterwards entered the province of Coca, which is one of the best we have met with in Florida. The cacique came out to meet us; he was carried in a litter, and attended by a numerous suite, the procession presenting the appearance of a fête. A great number of villages are subject to this cacique. The next morning all the Indians escaped; we took the cacique, that we might compel him to give us Indians to carry our
Baggage, and we remained several days until he had furnished them. In this province we found plums similar to those of Spain, and a considerable number of wild vines, which produced excellent grapes in abundance.

Leaving the village, we shaped our course west and southwest. During five or six days we met with villages belonging to this cacique, at length we reached another province called Italisi. The inhabitants having fled, we proceeded to seek for them. Some Indians came to us; the Governor told them to summon the cacique, who came and presented us with twenty-six or twenty-seven women, some deer-skins, and other things. Quitting this village, we proceeded towards the south in the direction of New Spain. We passed through several villages, and arrived at another province called Faszaluza, the cacique of which was an Indian of a stature so immense that he was universally believed to be a giant; he quietly awaited us in his village. On our arrival, we showed him all sorts of courteous attentions, and got up a tournament and horse-racing for his diversion, but he appeared to take very little interest in them. We at length asked him to procure for us some Indians to carry our baggage, to which he replied that he was not accustomed to serve anybody, but on the contrary he made every one serve him. The Governor gave orders to prevent his returning home, and to keep him prisoner. This Indian was greatly exasperated at thus seeing himself detained in our power; and this was the cause of the treachery which he committed in the sequel. He told us that he could give us nothing in this place, but that if we repaired to another village called Mavila, which belonged to him, he would there supply us with what we had asked of him. Having set out for this village, we found a large river which we supposed to be that which falls into the bay of Chuse; we learnt that the vessels of Narvaez had arrived there in want of water, and that a Christian named Teodoro and an Indian had remained among these Indians; at the
same time they showed us a dagger which had belonged to the Christian. We employed two days in constructing rafts for the passage of the river, during which the Indians killed a Christian, who was one of the Governor’s own guard. The Governor being greatly displeased, treated the cacique very roughly, and told him that he would have him burnt alive if he did not deliver up the murderers; the cacique replied that he would give them up to us at Mavila. This Indian cacique had a great number of natives under his orders; he had always near his person a man whose duty it was to keep off the flies; another behind him carried a large umbrella made of feathers to protect him from the rays of the sun.

We arrived at Mavila at nine o’clock in the morning; it was a small village built on a plain, surrounded by walls and very strong. There had been some cabins outside the enclosure, but all of these the Indians had demolished in order that the ground might be perfectly clear. Some of the chiefs came to meet us, and told the Governor through the interpreter, that he might take up his quarters either on the plain or in the village, whichever he preferred, and that in the evening we should receive some carriers. The Governor, thinking it best to enter the village in their company, gave orders accordingly, and we followed the Indians. We conversed with them amicably, for we saw only three or four hundred; but there were at least five thousand concealed in the houses of the village. They gave us a cordial welcome, commenced their dances and their exercises, and in order the more completely to deceive us, they introduced fifteen or twenty women, who capered before us. After they had danced for some time, the cacique arose and entered one of the houses. The Governor sent to order him to come out; he replied that he would not. The captain of the guard to the Governor entered to compel obedience, but perceiving in the interior of the house a vast number of warriors, all on their guard, he judged it more prudent to withdraw and to leave the cacique
there; he then reported to the Governor how he had seen those houses full of Indians armed with bows and arrows, and ready to commit some treachery. The Governor called to another cacique who was passing by, but this man likewise refused to come. One of the gentlemen who was standing near, caught him by the arm to lead him, but the man made a movement, and disengaged himself from his hold, whereupon the gentleman drew his sword, and struck at him a blow which cut off his arm. The Indian had no sooner received this wound, than all the rest began to discharge their arrows at us from the interior of the houses, through the numerous loopholes which they had made, whilst others attacked us from the outside. As we were completely thrown off our guard, having considered them as friends, we sustained such considerable loss that we were obliged to retreat out of the village, leaving behind all the baggage which the Indians had carried, in the place where they had unloaded it. Directly they perceived us on the outside, they closed the gates of the village, and began to beat their drums, display their flags, and set up a great shouting; they then opened our trunks and packages, and from the top of the walls exhibited to our view the property which they had made themselves masters of. As soon as we had left the village, we mounted our horses, and surrounded the walls, in order to prevent the Indians from coming out. The Governor made sixty or eighty of our men, all well armed, dismount, and ordered us to divide into four squadrons, and to go and attack the village in as many different places. The first who should enter, had orders to set fire to the houses, so as to prevent the besieged from doing us any injury. The horsemen, and the other soldiers who were not armed, were directed to guard the exterior of the village, and to take care that no Indian escaped. We put our plan into execution, entered the place, and set fire to the houses. A great number of Indians were burnt, but all our baggage
became a prey to the flames. Not a thing belonging to us remained. We fought the whole day till the evening without a single Indian asking for quarter; they defended themselves like furious lions; all of them perished, some by the sword, others by the fire; whilst those who endeavoured to escape were killed by thrusts from the lance. When night came, there remained no more than three Indians, who were guarding the twenty women they had brought out to dance; they placed these women in front of them, who crossed their hands, and made signs to the Christians as though asking to be taken; they then withdrew, and the three Indians discharged their arrows at us; we killed two of them, and the one now left, not willing to yield, climbed a tree which was upon the wall, unstrung his bow, fastened the cord round his neck and hanged himself.

On that day the Indians killed more than twenty of our men, and upwards of two hundred and fifty were wounded; we received more than six hundred and sixty arrows shots. During the night we dressed the wounds of our men with the fat of the dead Indians. No other medicine remained for our use, all that we possessed having been burnt in the affray. We stayed here twenty-seven or twenty-eight days, in order to recruit our strength. God permitted us all to escape. We took the women and made them tend those who were most seriously wounded. We learnt from the natives that we were distant upwards of forty leagues from the sea; we were very anxious for the Governor to proceed thither, that we might obtain tidings of the brigantines; but he would not venture, it being already the middle of November and the weather very cold. It was advisable to seek a country in which to winter, where there would be no want of provisions, for there was a scarcity in the place we now were staying at; we accordingly pursued our route towards the north, and marched ten or twelve days, suffering excessively from cold, and from the passage of
Biedma's Relation

rivers which we were obliged to ford; at length we reached an extensive and fertile province, where we might pass the winter until the extremity of the cold was over; for more snow falls in this country than in Spain.

This province was called Chicaza; the Indians attempted to defend the passage of a river, which we had to cross; we made a halt of three days, at the expiration of which we passed over in a canoe that we had constructed. All the Indians fled into the forest. Seven or eight days afterwards, messengers from the cacique came to the Governor, and said that their master intended to come and offer his services to him and all his company. The Governor received them favorably, and sent word to the cacique to come, and he would make him numerous presents. The cacique came accordingly, attended by a great many Indians, who carried him on their shoulders. He presented us with some little dogs and deer-skins. The cacique stayed with us, and the other Indians went away; each day they came and departed, bringing us many rabbits and whatever else they could procure in the country. In the night we surprised some Indians, who, under the pretext of being friendly, came to see how we slept and kept guard. Having no suspicion of their designs, we told the cacique that we should resume our journey on the morrow. He left, and the same night marched against us. As these Indians knew the places where we posted our sentinels, three hundred of them entered the village by twos and fours, carrying fire, which they had put into small pots so that we might not perceive them; and whilst they were making their way along, another troop was heard shouting their war cries; but the former had already set fire to the village. We experienced a great loss, for on this night they killed fifty-seven of our horses, upwards of three hundred swine, and thirteen or fourteen men; but what would appear to be a great miracle of God, is, that they fled without our offering them the slightest resistance. If they had persevered in their attack,
our destruction must have been inevitable. We left that place to make our way to a cabin, which might be a league distant; we were told that the Indians intended to march against us in the night, but it pleased God to send a little rain, which was the cause of their not coming.

We were in a very sad plight; a few horses were left, but we had neither saddles, lances, nor bucklers,—all had been burnt. We immediately set to work to make shields, saddles, and lances, as well as we were able. Five days afterwards the Indians sallied out to attack us again; they marched in good order of battle, and assailed us on three sides. As we had been forewarned, we marched to meet them, and put them to flight, after having killed a considerable number, which circumstance, God be praised, prevented their return. We stayed in this place two months, during which time we made saddles, lances, and bucklers, and at length resumed our march towards the north-west.

We proceeded to the province of Alibanio, where an event occurred to us, such as they say was never witnessed in the Indies. The natives who had in this place neither provisions, women, nor anything else to defend, constructed, in the middle of the road, for the sole purpose of contending with us, a very strong palisade, behind which three hundred warriors posted themselves, determined to die rather than allow us to pass. Directly we made our appearance, some of the Indians came out of the palisade, and threatened us, saying that not one of us should escape alive. As soon as we caught sight of the palisade, and of the warriors who were defending it, we supposed that behind it there were provisions or other valuables. We stood in the greatest need of food, for we knew that we should have to traverse a desert of twelve days' march, during which we should not meet with victuals of any kind. We then formed into a body of forty or fifty men, and divided ourselves into two troops to attack the enemy as soon as a trumpet should give the signal. We carried the palisade,
but with the loss of seven or eight men, and twenty-five were wounded; we killed several Indians, and took some prisoners, from whom we learnt that they had constructed this barrier for the express purpose of trying the mastery between us. We found some provisions in the environs, in order to enable us to pass the desert, through which we marched twelve days. The sick and wounded that we carried caused us considerable trouble. One day, at noon, we entered a village, named Quizquiz, so suddenly, that the Indians had received no notice of our arrival, but were at work in their maize fields; we took upwards of three hundred women in the village. These people were wretchedly poor, having only with them some skins and cloaks; it was in this place that we gathered for the first time small nuts of the country, which are superior to those of Spain. The village is built on the banks of the river Saint-Esprit, and we ascertained from the inhabitants, that this, as well as divers others in the immediate neighbourhood, were tributary to the sovereign of Pacaha, who is greatly renowned throughout all the country.

As soon as the Indians knew that we had captured these women, they came as friends to demand them of the Governor, who gave them up, and desired them to let him have some canoes in order to pass the Great River; they promised, but failed to do so, and even collected their forces to make war upon us, and presented themselves before the village in which we were; they did not, however, venture to attack us, but went away. We quitted the village, and proceeded to encamp upon the bank of the river, in order to see how we could pass it. We perceived a number of Indians, with a great many canoes, on the opposite side, ready to dispute our passage. We resolved upon making four large pirogues, each capable of containing sixty or seventy men, and five or six horses; and we spent twenty-seven or twenty-eight days in constructing them. During this time the Indians came out every day at three o'clock in the afternoon in two hundred and fifty canoes,
adorned with handsome flags, and approaching the shore where we were, they raised their war cries, and discharged as many arrows at us as they could; they then returned to the opposite shore. When, however, they saw that our barques were ready to pass the river, all of them fled and abandoned the place.

We crossed the river with much order; it was about a league broad, and the depth from nineteen to twenty fathoms. On the opposite side we found some excellent villages; we ascended the current with the intention of repairing to the province of Pacaha, for it was necessary to take this course in order to reach there. But before arriving at that province, we fell in with another sovereign, named Ycasqui, who was at war with the cacique of Pacaha; he came in a friendly manner to visit us, and said that he had long heard of us, that he knew we were men from heaven, on whom their arrows could inflict no injury, and that on this account he wished not to make war upon us, but to render us service. The Governor received him courteously, and forbade any person whomsoever to enter his village, or do him any harm. We encamped in a plain in sight of this cacique’s village, where we rested two days.

On the day of our arrival, the cacique asked the Governor to give him a sign by means of which after our departure he should be enabled to demand assistance during these wars, and by which his subjects could obtain water, which they greatly needed for the cultivation of their grounds, as their children were starving. The Governor ordered his men to make a large cross of a couple of pine trees, and told the cacique to return on the next day, when the sign from heaven which he had asked for would be given to him, and that he believed he would want for nothing, if he placed implicit faith in it. The cacique repeated his visit on the following day, and he then made a long oration, in which he asked why we delayed so long to give him the sign that he had requested, since he
was so well disposed to serve and to follow us; he began to weep bitterly because we did not give it him immediately, and in such a manner as to draw tears from all our eyes at witnessing his devotion, and the fervency with which he sought it. The Governor told him to return with his Indians, and that we should come in the evening to his village, and bring the sign which he was anxious to obtain. In the evening he presented himself with all his Indians, and we marched with them in procession to the village. The caciques of this country are in the habit of erecting, near the houses in which they reside, very high mounds; some, however, have their abodes on the summit of these mounds. It was upon one of these little mountains that we planted the cross. We all repaired thither, and with the greatest devotion fell on our knees to kiss the foot of it. The Indians followed our example, and afterwards brought a great quantity of reeds, with which they constructed a fence round about it.

The same evening we returned to our camp, and on the following morning departed for Pacaha, which was situated higher up; we marched two days, and arrived at a village in the middle of a plain, encompassed by walls and a moat full of water, dug by the hand of man. We approached as near as we could, and when we were quite close, we halted, not daring to enter. As we were turning round, we perceived at one side a vast number of the inhabitants leaving the place. We entered the village without meeting with any opposition. We took a very few Indians, for nearly all of them had already fled; but they were not able to place in safety the little that they possessed, for everything remained in the town. Whilst we stayed outside the walls without daring to enter, we saw a numerous party of Indians behind us, whom we took for warriors coming to the assistance of the village. We marched to meet them, but soon recognized the cacique we had left behind, and with whom we had planted the cross; he had come to render us assistance in
case we stood in need of it; we conducted him into the village. He began by thanking the Governor for the cross which he had given to him, and said that on the previous day rain had fallen in abundance; that all his subjects were so well satisfied, that they intended not to leave us again, but wished to bear us company. The Governor made him enter the village, and gave him all that we found there; (for they esteem as a great treasure a few collars formed of shell fish, skins of cats and of roebucks;) we gave him likewise a small quantity of maize that was in the village, and he left much delighted. We remained in this place in order to see if we could take the northern route, so as to cross to the South Sea.

After an abode of twenty-six or twenty-seven days, during which we made some excursions, we advanced towards the north-east, as we had been told that in that direction we should meet with large towns wherein we might take up our quarters. We travelled eight days through a desert covered with very extensive marshes, and where not a tree was to be seen; we could perceive nought but plains, where certain herbs grew so high and thick that the horses could with difficulty pass through them; we afterwards met with a party of Indians, who lived under tents stitched together, which they carry away with them whenever they choose; they have at such times only to roll up the covering of the tent, which an Indian takes charge of, whilst the woman carries the poles that support it; they construct and remove these tents with the greatest ease, and consequently being able to take their houses with them, they change their abodes very frequently. We ascertained from these Indians that in the interior there were several tribes like their own, who were nomadic, and pitched their tents in those places which were stocked with deer; that they frequented a marsh where there was an abundant supply of fish; that as soon as the game had been scared, and they caught no more
fish, they shifted their abode, and transporting their houses on their backs, and every thing they possessed, they betook themselves to some place where they could procure food. The name of this province was Calusi. The natives pay little attention to cultivating the soil, but depend entirely on hunting and fishing for subsistence. We returned to Pacaha, where the Governor had remained. We found the cacique, who had come again as a friend, along with the Governor; in the meantime the other cacique, who had kept further behind, and with whom we had planted the cross, arrived; it was a wonderful thing to see the reconciliation of these two hostile caciques. The Governor made them both sit by his side, and one could hardly imagine the pains that each took to obtain the right-hand place.

Finding that there was no possibility of reaching the other sea, we returned towards the south. The cacique with whom we had planted the cross, accompanied us. On taking leave of him, we marched in the direction of the other sea, that is to say, towards the south-west, until we reached a province called Quiguata, in which is the largest village that we have seen in Florida; it was situated on one of the arms of the great river. Here we stayed eight or nine days for the purpose of procuring interpreters and guides, intending always to reach the other sea, for the Indians told us that eleven days' march would bring us to a province where they killed oxen, and where we should find interpreters who would conduct us to the sea.

We left with the guides for that province which is called Coligua; there was no beaten track; every evening they led us near to a marsh where we refreshed ourselves, and found abundance of fish. We crossed vast plains, and very high mountains, and at length came quite suddenly upon the town of Coligua, as though we had reached it by a high road. We observed all along the way traces of the passage of men; we found a great quantity of provisions in this
country, and a considerable number of ox tails tanned, and others in preparation. During the route, we made inquiries of the Indians respecting the country we were in search of, and whether there were any village far or near; but to these inquiries we could never obtain any answer: all they said was, that if we wished to go to any villages, we ought to take the direction of west-south-west. We accordingly followed the route which the Indians had pointed out, and arrived a some scattered villages which bore the name of Tatil Coya we found there a large river which falls into the Rio Grande; we learnt that by ascending the first stream we should meet with a considerable province, called Cayas; we accordingly went to this place, and saw that it was composed of detached villages thickly peopled, where we made some reconnoiterings; the entire country is covered with mountains.

During an excursion, the cacique and a great number of natives were seized, of whom we made inquiries respecting the country: they replied, that by ascending the river we should find a large province called Tula. The Governor was desirous of going to see whether it would be possible for us to winter there: he accordingly set out with twenty horsemen, leaving the remainder in the province of Cayas. Before, however, we reached Tula, we passed over steep mountains, and at length entered the village without any notice being given of our arrival; we set about capturing some Indians, but they defended themselves, and that day wounded nine or ten of our horses and seven or eight Spaniards. They were so brave that they formed into parties of eight or ten, and rushed upon us like furious dogs; we killed about thirty or forty of them.

The Governor seeing that we were but few in number, considered that it was not prudent to pass the night in this place; we accordingly returned by the same route that we had taken. We crossed a level plain surrounded by the
Biedma's Relation.

river, after having passed over the mountain, which we feared might be occupied by the Indians. The next day the Governor came to the spot where he had left his party, but the Indians who had been seized had made their escape, and there were none others in the province whom our interpreter could understand. The Governor gave orders that all should get ready to go to that province, and we proceeded thither without loss of time. We had scarcely arrived on the following day, when we perceived three large troops of Indians advancing towards us from three different sides. We routed them after having killed some men, which put an end to hostilities; two or three days afterwards, they despatched messengers to us as if to sue for peace, but as we had no interpreters, we were not able to understand them. We made them comprehend by signs, that they were to send us interpreters for the natives whom we intended to visit; they brought us five or six Indians who understood our interpreters. They were inquisitive to know who we were, and what was the object of our journey; we made inquiries after some large province where there might be a good supply of provisions, for we began to feel severely the rigour of the winter; they said, that in the direction we were following, they had no knowledge of any very extensive population. Seeing that no other resource was left for us, we resumed the route of the south-east, and proceeded to a province called Quipana, which was situated at the foot of very lofty mountains. From thence we turned towards the east, and crossing those mountains, we descended into a plain, which was inhabited, and appeared favourable for our plans; not far off was a village where there was plenty of provisions; it was constructed on the bank of a large river, which flowed into the great river, along which we had passed: the province was called Viranque, and here we Viranque spent the winter, and suffered so much from the cold and snow, that we thought we should have perished. The
Christian who was found among the Indians whom Narvaez had visited, and who acted as our interpreter, died at this place.

We departed from this village at the beginning of March, when we supposed that the extremity of the cold was over. We descended the course of the river, on the shores of which we found other provinces well peopled and rich in provisions; at length we reached another province, called Anicoyanque, which appeared to us to be one of the best that we had seen in this country. A cacique whose name was Guachoyanque, came to visit us; his village was situated on the bank of the great river; he was frequently at war with the cacique whom we were leaving. The Governor set out immediately for the village of Guachoyanque in company with the cacique. His village was very well enclosed with walls, and fortified, but there was only a scanty supply of provisions, for the Indians had robbed him of all that he had.

The Governor came to a resolution at this place, in case he should discover the sea, to build some brigantines which might convey intelligence to Cuba that we were alive, and to ask for horses and other things of which we stood in need; he despatched the captain towards the south, with orders to search out some road so as to reach the sea; for notwithstanding the questions which were put to the Indians, no exact knowledge could be obtained as to its existence on this side. He came back and reported that he had not discovered any road by which to cross the vast morasses formed by the great river on this side.

The Governor being in great perplexity of mind, and matters not turning out according to his wishes, fell sick and died, having nominated Luis de Moscoso to succeed him. Not discovering any road for reaching the sea, we determined upon resuming the route towards the west, in the hopes of proceeding by land to Mexico, provided we did not succeed
in finding in the interior some place where we could remain; we marched during seventeen days, and arrived at the province of Chavite, where the Indians made abundance of salt; we had no information respecting the north; from thence we repaired to the province of Aguacay, and three days more were spent in getting there, taking a direct northerly course.

The Indians told us that we should not meet with any inhabited country, unless we descended towards the south-east and south, where we should find villages and provisions; but on the side to which we were desirous of going, there were only extensive tracts of sand, without village or any kind of food; we were consequently forced to turn our steps to that side which the Indians had pointed out. We next reached a province called Nisione, and subsequently others called Nandacaho and Lacame: the country becoming more and more barren, the scarcity of provisions increased; we received some notice respecting the province of Xucatino, which we had been told was considerable; the cacique of Nandacaho gave us an Indian for a guide who would conduct us into a country from whence we could no more escape; he led us then into a wild country through which there was no road, and finished by telling us, that his master had ordered him to carry us to a place where we should die of hunger. We took another guide, who conducted us into the province of Hais, to which herds of oxen occasionally resorted. As soon as the natives saw us enter their territories, they collected their forces in order to prevent our killing the oxen; they attacked us with their arrows, which occasioned us some loss. We left this province for that of Xacatin, which is surrounded by thick forests; provisions there were scarce; from thence the Indians conducted us on the east side into other small villages, which were destitute of provisions; they pretended to lead us to a country where there were other Christians; we soon, however, found out that they were
deceiving us, and that they could not have acquired any such knowledge, as they had seen no other Christians but ourselves; but as our course had been so very circuitous, it was possible that they had already seen us pass by. We then took once more the southerly direction, with a firm determination to reach New Spain, or perish in the attempt.

We marched six days in the direction of south-south-east, after which we halted. We sent out a detachment of six horsemen, with orders for them to advance for eight or nine days as far as possible, and to see whether they could not discover some village where we might procure a supply of maize for the journey. They set out accordingly and proceeded as far as they could, and met with some poor Indians who had no houses, but lived in wretched cabins; they cultivated no plants of any kind, but subsisted solely on fish and game; four or five of these natives were taken, but no one could be found who understood their language.

Seeing that we were without interpreters, and without provisions, and that the maize which we had brought began to fail,—in short, that it was impossible so many persons could travel through so poor a country,—we resolved upon returning to the village where the Governor Soto had died, thinking that at that place we should find greater facilities for constructing the vessels in which we might take our departure from the country.

We accordingly retraced our steps to the place where the Governor had died. When we arrived there, we were disappointed in our expectations, for the Indians had carried off all the provisions that were in the village; this compelled us to seek another, with a view of wintering there, and building the vessels. God permitted us to discover two villages most suitable for our purpose; they were situated upon the great river, were fortified, and contained great store of maize. Here we took up our quarters, and set to work to build our vessels. Six months were spent in con-
structuring seven brigantines, with the utmost difficulty; at length we launched them into the stream, and in truth it was miraculous that they sailed so well, and did not let in the water, considering that they were only caulked with the bark of mulberry trees, and without any pitch. We took with us some canoes, into which we put twenty-six horses; and we intended, in case we met with a village on the coast where we could live, to despatch two brigantines with intelligence to the viceroy of New Spain, so that he might send vessels to seek us.

On the second day, as we were descending the river, forty or fifty Indian canoes, of a very large size and very light, approached us; one of these contained eighty warriors, who kept hovering in our rear, and showering their arrows upon us; many of our men looking upon it as a piece of cowardice not to attack them, took four or five of our small canoes, and advanced against those of the Indians, who, as soon as they saw their manœuvres, surrounded them, cut off their retreat, overturned their canoes, and killed twelve of our best soldiers, without our being able to render them any assistance. The stream was very rapid, and we had but few oars on board.

The Indians, emboldened by this success, continued pursuing us until we reached the sea, which lasted nineteen days. We sustained a heavy loss from them, and had several of our soldiers wounded. Perceiving that we had no weapons which could reach them from a distance—for we had neither crossbow nor arquebuss remaining, but only a few swords and bucklers—they had not the least fear of us, but approached very near to discharge their arrows at us. We entered the sea by the mouth of the river, which forms a very large bay. We sailed during three days and nights in very fair weather, without perceiving land. We suspected that we were in the open sea, but at the expiration of the above-mentioned time, we took up water which was as fresh
as that of the river, and very good to drink. We discovered some small islands on the west side; towards these we shaped our course, and from that time we continually followed the coast, gathering shell-fish, and searching after anything we might find to eat, till at length we entered the river of Panuco, where we had a welcome reception from the Christians.

Signed, Luis Fernandez de Biedma.
INDEX.

A.

Aays, 186, 141
Acapachiqui, xxxii, 178
Acuza, 35
Achese, xli, xlv, 48
Acoeste, xxxii, xlvii
Adelantado, etymology of, 9
Aguascalencu, xxxii, 175
Aguacay, xxxii, 130, 131, 197
Aguile, 176
Aillon (Lucas d'), see Ayllon
Alibano, xxxii, 1, 188
Alimann, xxxii; the town from which the River Alabama takes its name, 1, 82, 87
Almadia, derivation of, 116
Al-Sharef, signification of, 14
Altamaaca, xxxii, xlv, 49
Altamaha River, xlv
Altapaha, xxxii, xlv, 179
Amaxura River, xxxviii
Amaye, 181
Aminoya, lix, lx, lxiv
Anaca Apalache, xxxii; placed by Gallatin in the vicinity of the Oc-kokona river, xlv; and by M'Culloh north of the river Uche, xlvii; and by Monette 100 to 130 miles north of St. Mark's, xlviii; and by Irving and Pickett in the neighbourhood of Tallahassee Town, xlv; description of, 48, 49
Anasco (Juan de), 156, 158, 176
Anicoyanque, xxxii, 196
Anilco, xxxii, iviii
Animals of Florida, 160
Anozi, 112
Apalache, see also Anaica; visited by Pamphilo de Narvaez in 1528, xx; probably the south-east portion of Alabama, xxiv, xxxii, xi-xlvi, 44, 176
Appalachicola River, known to the Muskogees by the name of Chatta Hatchee, xli

Aquixo, 90, 93
Arkansas, lii-lx
Aute, sea-port of, visited by Narvaez in 1528, xx; placed by Gallatin in Apalache Bay, xli; and by M'Culloh at the head of the Bay of St. Mark's, xliii
Autiamque, xxxii, iivi, 112-114
Avila (Peter Arias of), see Davila
Axille, xxxii, xli, 42
Ayays, ivii, 115
Ayllon (Lucas Vasquez de), his discoveries in Florida, xiv-xix, 58, 179, 181
Aymay, 54

B.

Balboa (Vasco Nunez de) put to death by order of Pedrarias Davila, 9
Bancroft (Mr.), criticism on the Portuguese History of Soto's Expedition, and on Garcilasso de la Vega, xxxii
Bacia (Andres Gonzalez), quotation from his "Historia de Florida", on Kentish long tails, vi
Baya-Honda, 173
Biedma (Luis Hernandez de), narrative of Soto's expedition, vii, 14, 173-200
Bimini, island of, voyage of Ponce de Leon in search of, xi
Birds of Florida, 169
Bison, or buffalo, traces of the, 66, 102, 110
Black Warrior River, xlix
Bobadilla (Donna Isabella de), wife of Soto, 24, 111, 177
Brassos de Dios, river, lvi
Burke (Edmund), quotation from his "European Settlements in America", respecting the Fountain of Youth, xii
Bur (David H.), his map of the United States, xxxvii
C.
Cabeza de Vaca (Alvar Nunez), his remarkable over-land journey from Florida to Mexico, xxi-xxvi; extract from his *Relacion*, xxiv, xxvi; his report to the emperor concerning Florida, and notice of, 11, 112, 139, 140; appointed Governor of Rio de la Plata, 13
Cabot (Sebastian), question as to his discovery of Florida, vii-x
Cabusto, 81
Cado villages, liii
Cale, xxxii, 36
Caliquen, xxxii, 38
Caluca, 102
Calusi, 103
Canasagua, xlvi, 61
Capachiqui, xxxi, xliv, 46
Capaha, xxxii; position of, liii-lv
Casa de Contratacion at Seville, 10
Casiste, 72
Casqui, xxxii; on the banks of the Red River, lii-lv, 94-103
Catalo, 129
Catamaya, 112
Cavallos, Baia de, visited by Narvaez in 1528, supposed to be Choctahatchee Bay, xxiv
Cayas, lii-lviii, 108-109, 194
Chaguate, 128-130, 141
Chalaque, xxxii; probably a tribe of Cherokees, xlvi, 60
Chavite, 107
Chiaha, xxxii; placed on the Etowee branch of the Coosa river, xlvi; supposed by Monette to have been Floyd county, Georgia; and by Pickett, on the site of the town of Rome, xlvii, 62
Chicaqa, xxxii, xxxv; situated probably in the valley of the Yalobusha, xlvi, 81-87, 187
Chickasaw Bluff, probably the spot where Soto crossed the Mississippi, lii
Chicora, a province discovered by Aylon, xiv
Chilano, 141, 143
China, xxxii, 182
Chiesa, xxxii, li, 93, 102
Chisi, xliv, 179
Choctahatchee Bay, called Baia de Cavallos by Narvaez, xxiv
Cholulapaha, 38
Chuse, bay of, 183
Coja, xxxii; description answers to the town of "Old Coosa", in latitude 39° 30', on Coosa river, xlvi, 67-70, 182
Cofachiqui, see also Cutisachiqui, xxxii
Cofaquii, xxxiii, xliv, 50
Coftachyque, xxxii, 179, 180
Cofoqui, 179
Coligosa, xxxii, lv, lvi, 105
Coligua, 103
Colima, xxxii, lv, lvi
Conies, Indian method of catching, 114
Connesaugo river, xlvi
Coosaw river, supposed to be the Jordan, discovered by Ayllon, xiv, xlvii
Copee, a sound of the sea like pitch, 160
Coronado (Francis Vasquez de), voyage to Cibola in 1540, 5
Cortes (Hernando), xiii, 28
Costa, xxxii, xlvi, 65
Costeño, xxxii, 162
Cuba, description of, 17
Cutisachiqui, xxxii, xxxiv; placed by Monette on the head-waters of the Savannah river, xlvi; and by Galatian on the Ocone or on the Savannah river, xlv; and by Pickett on the east bank of the Savannah, at the modern Silver Bluff, Barnwell Dist., S. Carolina, xlvi, 55

D.
Danusco (John), see Anasco
Datha, a giant king spoken of by Pet. Martyr, xv
Davila (Pedrarias), notice of, 9
Daycao, 138-142
Dogs, eaten by the Spaniards, but not by the Indians, 61
Drayton (Michael), "Ode to the Virginian Voyage", ii, iii
Duharhe, a province discovered by Ayllon, xiv; gigantic Indians of, described by Peter Martyr, xv

E.
Elvas, Gentleman of, see "Gentleman of Elvas"
Enequem, a herb like hemp, used for caulking vessels, 142, 144
Espejo (Antonio de), discovers New Mexico, 5
Espiritu Santo, bay of, Soto lands his army there, probably Hillsborough Bay, xxxvii, 24, 173
Espiritu Santo, Rio de, see Mississippi Estuahatchee river, xl Etocoa, xxxii, 175
Evill Peace, town of, 37
INDEX.

F.
Fassaluza, xxxii, 188
Fish, different kinds of, found in the Rio Grande or Mississippi, 98, 99; Indian method of taking, 105
Florida, discovery of,—by Cabot, vii; by Ponce de Leon, x; by Pineda, xiii; by Aylton, xiii-xix; by Verazano, xix; by Narvaez and Cabeza de Vaca, xix-xxvi; former extent of, x, 188; why so called, x; animals, fowls, and fruits of, 109

G.
Gallatin (Hon. Albert), extract from his “Synopsis of the Indian tribes”, xxxv-xxxvi
Galvan (Antonio), extract from, relative to Aylton, xviii
Garay (Francisco), Governor of Jamaica, sends Pineda with four ships to explore the continent towards Florida, xiii
“Gentleman of Elvas”, writes an account of the expedition into Florida of Fernando de Soto, i; extreme rarity of the original Portuguese work, i; translated by Hakluyt, i-iii; translated into French by Citri de la Guette, and again into English, iv; translated into Dutch, vi; character of the work, v, vi; by Mr. Sparks, xxvii xix; by Mr. Bancroft, xxxiii
Gomera, island of, 16
Great River, see Mississippi
Grivalja (Juan de), discovers New Spain, 23
Guachoya, xxxii, lviii, lix, 118-123; death of Soto at, 123, 146, 147
Guachoyanque, 106
Guahate, 112
Guasco, 137-140
Guasuli, xxxii
Guaxule, xxxii, 61
Guzman (John de), death of, 152

H.
Hacanae, 192
Hakluyt (Richard), translates the Portuguese history of Soto’s discoveries, i; account of the work, ii-iv; criticism upon, by Sparks and Bancroft, xxvii-xxxv
Hapaluya, 41
Hariot (Thoma-), notice of, 3
Helena, lii, lv, ix
Helena, Saint, discovered by Aylton (cape), xv; (river), 181
Hillsborough Bay, xxxvii; River, xxxviii
Hirrhiguia, xxxvii
Huasene, 160
Hurripæxi, xxxii, 174

I.
Ichiiha, xli
Indians, great eloquence of the, 111; Indians of Duharhe described by Pet. Martyr, xv
Iniachico, xxxii, 176
Inzignanin, a country visited by Aylton, xv
Irving (Mr. Theodore), his “Conquest of Florida”, xxvii, xxxiii, xxxvi; understates the work of the “Gentleman of Elvas”, xxvii; preference for the Lima Garcilasso de la Vega, xxx; notes upon the route of De Soto’s army, xxxvii
Italisis, xxxii, 183
Ivitachuoco, xxxii, 176

J.
Jordan, river, discovered by Aylton, xiv; note on, by Mr. Sparks, xiv

K.
Kentsch long tails, mentioned in Barcia’s “Historia de Florida”, xvi

L.
Lacame, xxxii, 197
Lacane, xxxii, 135
Las Casas (Bartolomé de), extract from his “Brevisissima relacion de las Indias”, on De Soto’s cruelties, lxvi
Loaves made of prunes, 110

M.
Maadis, a kind of canoe used in Morroco, 116
M’Culloh (Dr. J. H.), his “Researches concerning the aboriginal history of America”, xxxvi; Route of the Spaniards west of the Mississippi, li-lxiv
Maldonado (Francis), 80, 177
Margarites, beads much esteemed in Peru, 117
Mark’s, St., Bay of, called the Bay of Aute by Narvaez, xx
INDEX.

Martyr (Peter), extracts from, relating to Cabot, viii, ix; on the discovery of Florida, and why so called, x; descriptive of the Indians of Duharbe, xv; relative to Aylton, xvi

Mavilla, xxxii-xxxv; supposed to have stood on the n. side of the Alabama, and at a place called Choctaw Bluff, xlviii; 74-81, 184-186

Mavila, xxxii

Mendoça (Don Antonio de), Viceroy of Mexico, 164

Mexico, ancient name of, 105

Micanopy, Fort, xxxix, x1

Minoya, lix, lx, lxiv, 143-149

Mississippi River, called by the Spaniards Rio de Espiritu Santo and Rio Grande; discovered and named by Pineda in 1519, xxxii; crossed by Cabeça de Vaca, xxxi, xxxii; Mr. Greenhow’s letter respecting, xxxii; four Indian names of, 118; crossed by De Soto’s army in 1541, probably within thirty miles of Helena: according to Irving, at the lowest Chickasaw Bluff; and according to McCulloh, about twenty or thirty miles below the mouth of the Arkansas River, xxxi, lii, 92, 169; described, lii, 90-92, 162; the Spaniards descend the river, lx, lxiii, lxiv, 149-154, 196

Mococo, 32, 33

Monette (Dr. J. W.), his “History of the discovery and settlement of the valley of the Mississippi, xxxvii; route of the Spaniards west of the Mississippi, lii lx

Moscoso de Alvarado (Luys de), takes the command on the death of Soto, 125, 196

Mosquitos, an infinite swarm of, 159

N.

Naçacahoz, 137

Naguatax, lix, 131-135, 141

Nandacahó, xxxii, 197

Napetuca, 39

Naquiscoça, 137

Narváez (Pamphilo de), his expedition to Florida in 1527-8, xix, xxxvi, 11, 29, 38, 43, 142, 176, 183

Natchitoches, lix

Nicallas, 82

Nilco, xxxii, liii, lix, 116-128, 141-147

Nisione, xxxi, 197

Nissoone, xxxii, 195

Nonacaco, xxxii, 195, 196

Nuttall (Mr. T.), his travels into the Arkansa, xxxvii

O.

Ocali, xxxii; probably in the neighborhood of Fort King, xxxix

Ochete, 43

Ochile, xxxii, xxxix

Ochlockony River, crossed by the Spaniards, xlv

Ochus, probably either Pensacola, or the entrance of the Mobile, xli, 45

Ockeeokas River, xli

Ocone, xxxii, xxxvi, xlv, xliv, 49, 179

Oehahieche Swamp, xlii

Okefenokee River, xli

Orange Lake, xxxix

Oro, Rio del, 138

Ortiz (Juan), the interpreter, 29, 173, 174; death of, at Antiamque, 115, 196

Osachiele, conjectured by Fairbanks to be Suwanee Old Town, xl

Ocilla river, xli, xlii

Ossachiele, xxxii, xl

Otoa, xliv, 178

Ouchita river, lvi

P.

Pacaha, xxxii, 93-103, 191

Pafallaya, 81

Palache, xxxix

Paisena, lvi, 106

Panuco, river and town, 162-164, 200

Paracossi, xxxii, xxxvii, 34, 35

Pato, 131

Patofa, xxxiv, 50

Pearl river, xi x

Pears, found at Cutfia-Chiqui, 57

Pensacola bay, discovered by Narvaez, xxxii, xlii

Piache, 73

Pineda (Alonzo Alvarez de), takes the command of an expedition towards Florida in 1519, and afterwards coasts westward as far as Vera Cruz, xlii; discovers the river Mississippi, xxxii

Piragua, meaning of, 116

Ponce de Leon (Juan), discovers and explores Florida, x; account of his voyage and search after the Fountain of Youth, xi

Potano, 97

Q.

Quigalta, 118-121, 150, 153

Quigate, lvi

Quiguate, xxxii, 102-105

Quiguata, xxxii, 103

Quiguate, lv

Quipana, xxxii, 112, 195

Quizquiz, xxxii, li, 89, 189
INDEX.

R.
Red River, liv-ix
Rio de Espiritu Santo, see Mississippi
Rio del Oro, 198
Rio Grande, see Mississippi

S.
Saba, St., mountains, lvii
Salt made by the Indians at Cayas, 107, 108; and at Chaguata and Aguacay, 190, 191
Santa Cruz Bay, Narvaez lands his army at, xix
Saquechuma, 82
Seville, Casa de Contratacion, 10; Xarafe, described, 14
Soacatino, xxxii, 186, 187
Soto (Fernando de), went with Pizarro to the conquest of Peru—appointed Governor of Cuba, and adelantado of Florida, 10; his death, at Guachoya, 125, 106
Sparks (Mr. Jared), criticism on the work of the "Gentleman of Elvas", and on Garcilasso de la Vega, xxvii-xxix; remarks upon, xxxi
Suwanee river, xxxix; and Old Town, xl

T.
Taguanate, 147
Tali, 67
Talipatava, 81
Talise, xxxii
Tallahatchy river, 1
Tallimuchase, 70
Tallise, xxxii; lying at the elbow of Talapoosa river, xlvi, 71
Tamaocas, ix
Tanico (Tankaways?), lvii, 107
Tascauca, xxxii; quotation from Bossu respecting its site, xlvi, 72
Tatalicoya, xxxii, lvii, 106
Tatilicoya, xxxii, 194
Tianto, lvii, 116
Tetiquaquo, 113
Toalli, xliv, 47
Toasi, 71
Tocaste, 35
Tombigby river, xlix
Tula, xxxii, lvii, 194
Tulla, xxxii, 106, 109
Tutelpino, lvii, 118

U.
Uche river, xlii
Ucita, xxxvii, 24, 25
Ullibahali, 70
Urribarracuix, xxxii, xxxvii
Utiangne, xxxii, lvii
Utinama, 37
Uzachil, xli, 41
Uzela, xxxii

V.
Vasconcelos (Andrew de), 148
Veachele, xxxii, 175
Vega (Garcilasso de la), his history of Florida, v; criticism on, by Mr. Sparks, xxix; by Mr. Bancroft, xxxiii; his tendency to romance, xxxi; synoptical table, showing his extravagancies in numbers, xxxiv
Velasquez (Diego), Governor of Cuba, 23
Verazzano (Giovanni da), his discoveries in the northern parts of America, xix
Viedma, see Biedma
Villa faria, 88
Viranque, xxxii, lvii, 195
"Virginia richly valued", 1600, ii;
"Ode to the Virginian Voyage", by Drayton, ii, iii
Vitachuco, xxxii; probably about fifteen miles west of Fort Micanopy, xxxix, 43

W.
Wahoo swamp, xxxviii
Washita river, lii-lv, lx
White river, lii, lv
Withlacoochy river, xxxviii

X.
Xacatin, 107
Xarafe of Seville, description of, 14
Xucacatino, xxxii, 197
Xualla, xxxii; probably on the source of the Catahootchee river, xlv; placed by Col. Pickett in Habersham county, xlvi, 60, 182

Y.
Ycasqui, xxxii, 190
Ychiaha, xxxii
Ytara, 37
Ytava, 70
Yustaga, 176